REVISION RECORD FOR THE STATE OF CALIFORNIA

ERRATA

January 1, 2015

2013 Title 24, Part 9, California Code of Regulations

General Information:

1. The date of this erratum is for identification purposes only. See the History Note Appendix on the backside or accompanying page.
2. This erratum is issued by the California Building Standards Commission in order to correct non-substantive printing errors or omissions in California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 9, of the 2013 *California Fire Code*. Instructions are provided below.
3. Health and Safety Code Section 18938.5 establishes that only building standards in effect at the time of the application for a building permit may be applied to the project plans and construction. This rule applies to both adoptions of building standards for Title 24 by the California Building Standards Commission, and local adoptions and ordinances imposing building standards. An erratum to Title 24 is a non-regulatory correction because of a printing error or omission that does not differ substantively from the official adoption by the California Building Standards Commission. Accordingly, the corrected code text provided by this erratum may be applied on and after the stated effective date.
4. You may wish to retain the superseded material with this revision record so that the prior wording of any section can be easily ascertained.

Title 24, Part 9

Remove Existing Pages	Insert Buff Colored Pages
47 through 54	47 through 54
91 and 92	91 and 92
131 and 132	131 and 132
137 and 138	137 and 138
141 through144	141 through 144
147 through 150	147 through 150
153 and 154	153 and 154
157 through 174	157 through 174
177 through 180	177 through 180
187 and 188	187 and 188
195 and 196	195 and 196
199 through 206	199 through 206
213 through 216	213 through 216
219 through 228	219 through 228
231 through 234	231 through 234
237 and 238	237 and 238
243 through 246	243 through 246
359 through 362	359 through 362
399 and 400	399 and 400
509 through 530	509 through 530
579 and 580	579 and 580

Item No. 5590S133

[B] MERCHANDISE PAD. A merchandise pad is an area for display of merchandise surrounded by aisles, permanent fixtures or walls. Merchandise pads contain elements such as nonfixed and moveable fixtures, cases, racks, counters and partitions as indicated in Section 105.2 of the *California Building Code* from which customers browse or shop.

METAL HYDRIDE. A generic name for compounds composed of metallic element(s) and hydrogen.

METAL HYDRIDE STORAGE SYSTEM. A closed system consisting of a group of components assembled as a package to contain metal-hydrogen compounds for which there exists an equilibrium condition where the hydrogen-absorbing metal alloy(s), hydrogen gas and the metal-hydrogen compound(s) coexist and where only hydrogen gas is released from the system in normal use.

[B] MEZZANINE. An intermediate level or levels between the floor and ceiling of any story and in accordance with Section 505 of the *California Building Code*.

MOBILE FUELING. The operation of dispensing liquid fuels from tank vehicles into the fuel tanks of motor vehicles. Mobile fueling may also be known by the terms "Mobile fleet fueling," "Wet fueling" and "Wet hosing."

MORTAR. A tube from which fireworks shells are fired into the air.

MULTIPLE-STATION ALARM DEVICE. Two or more single-station alarm devices that can be interconnected such that actuation of one causes all integral or separate audible alarms to operate. It also can consist of one single-station alarm device having connections to other detectors or to a manual fire alarm box.

MULTIPLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM. Two or more single-station alarm devices that are capable of interconnection such that actuation of one causes the appropriate alarm signal to operate in all interconnected alarms.

NESTING. A method of securing flat-bottomed compressed gas cylinders upright in a tight mass using a contiguous three-point contact system whereby all cylinders within a group have a minimum of three points of contact with other cylinders, walls or bracing.

NET EXPLOSIVE WEIGHT (net weight). The weight of explosive material expressed in pounds. The net explosive weight is the aggregate amount of explosive material contained within buildings, magazines, structures or portions thereof, used to establish quantity-distance relationships.

NON-ACCESSIBLE AREA. *An enclosed area that creates a cavity by the application of any construction feature and/or building materials. This area shall be recognized by the enforcing agency as a separation between the non-accessible space and any adjacent, occupied space of the building.*

NONAMBULATORY PERSONS. *Persons unable to leave a building unassisted under emergency conditions. It includes, but is not limited to, persons who depend on mechanical aids such as crutches, walkers and wheelchairs and any person who is unable to physically and mentally respond to a sensory signal approved by the State Fire Marshal or an oral instruction relating to fire danger.*

The determination of ambulatory or nonambulatory status of persons with developmental disabilities shall be made by the Director of Social Services or his or her designated representative, in consultation with the Director of Developmental Services or his or her designated representative. The determination of ambulatory or nonambulatory status of all other disabled persons placed after January 1, 1984, who are not developmentally disabled shall be made by the Director of Social Services or his or her designated representative.

NONCOMBUSTIBLE. [SFM] *Noncombustible as applied to building construction material means a material which, in the form in which it is used, is either one of the following:*

1. *Material of which no part will ignite and burn when subjected to fire. Any material passing ASTM E 136 shall be considered noncombustible.*
2. *Material having a structural base of noncombustible material as defined in Item 1 above, with a surfacing material not over* $^1/_8$ *inch (3.2 mm) thick which has a flame-spread index of 50 or less.*

"Noncombustible" does not apply to surface finish materials. Material required to be noncombustible for reduced clearances to flues, heating appliances or other sources of high temperature shall refer to material conforming to Item 1. No material shall be classed as noncombustible which is subject to increase in combustibility or flame-spread index, beyond the limits herein established, through the effects of age, moisture or other atmospheric condition.

NORMAL TEMPERATURE AND PRESSURE (NTP). A temperature of 70°F (21°C) and a pressure of 1 atmosphere [14.7 psia (101 kPa)].

[B] NOSING. The leading edge of treads of stairs and of landings at the top of stairway flights.

NOTIFICATION ZONE. See "Zone, notification."

NUISANCE ALARM. An alarm caused by mechanical failure, malfunction, improper installation or lack of proper maintenance, or an alarm activated by a cause that cannot be determined.

[B] NURSING HOMES. Facilities that provide care, including both intermediate care facilities and skilled nursing facilities, where any of the persons are incapable of self-preservation *or classified as nonambulatory or bedridden.*

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION. For the purposes of this code, certain occupancies are defined as follows:

[B] Assembly Group A. Assembly Group A occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for the gathering of persons for purposes such as civic, social or religious functions; recreation, food or drink consumption; or awaiting transportation *or Motion Picture and Television Production Studio Sound Stages, Approved Production Facilities and production locations. Any building or structure or portion thereof used or intended to be used for the showing of motion pictures when an admission fee is charged and when such building or structure is open to the public and has a capacity of 10 or more persons.*

Small buildings and tenant spaces. A building or tenant space used for assembly purposes with an occupant load of less than 50 persons shall be classified as a Group B occupancy.

Small assembly spaces. The following rooms and spaces shall not be classified as assembly occupancies:

1. A room or space used for assembly purposes with an occupant load of less than 50 persons and accessory to another occupancy shall be classified as a Group B occupancy or as part of that occupancy.
2. A room or space used for assembly purposes that is less than 750 square feet (70 m^2) in area and accessory to another occupancy shall be classified as a Group B occupancy or as part of that occupancy.

Associated with Group E occupancies. A room or space used for assembly purposes that are associated with a Group E occupancy are not considered separate occupancies.

Accessory with places of religious worship. Accessory religious educational rooms and religious auditoriums with occupant loads of less than 100 are not considered separate occupancies.

Assembly Group A-1. Assembly uses, usually with fixed seating, intended for the production and viewing of performing arts or motion pictures including, but not limited to:

Motion picture and television production studio Sound Stages, Approved Production Facilities and production locations. (With live audiences).
Motion picture theaters
Symphony and concert halls
Television and radio studios admitting an audience
Theaters

Assembly Group A-2. Assembly uses intended for food and/or drink consumption including, but not limited to:

Banquet halls
Casinos (gaming areas)
Night clubs
Restaurants, cafeterias and similar dining facilities (including associated commercial kitchens)
Taverns and bars

Assembly Group A-3. Assembly uses intended for worship, recreation or amusement and other assembly uses not classified elsewhere in Group A, including, but not limited to:

Amusement arcades
Art galleries
Bowling alleys
Community halls
Courtrooms
Dance halls (not including food or drink consumption)
Exhibition halls
Funeral parlors
Gymnasiums (without spectator seating)
Indoor swimming pools (without spectator seating)
Indoor tennis courts (without spectator seating)
Lecture halls
Libraries
Museums
Places of religious worship
Pool and billiard parlors
Waiting areas in transportation terminals

Assembly Group A-4. Assembly uses intended for viewing of indoor sporting events and activities with spectator seating including, but not limited to:

Arenas
Skating rinks
Swimming pools
Tennis courts

Assembly Group A-5. Assembly uses intended for participation in or viewing outdoor activities including, but not limited to:

Amusement park structures
Bleachers
Fixed guideway transit system. [SFM] *Fixed transit guideway system buildings shall conform to the requirements of this code for their occupancy classification in addition to the provisions set forth in Section 433 of the California Building Code.*
Grandstands
Stadiums
Subterranean spaces for winery facilities in natural or manmade caves. [SFM] *For fire and life safety requirements, see Section 436 of the California Building Code.*

[B] Business Group B. Business Group B occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for office, professional or service-type transactions, including storage of records and accounts. Business occupancies shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Airport traffic control towers
Ambulatory care facilities *serving five or fewer patients (see Group I-2.1 or Section 308.4.2 California Building Code for facilities serving more than five patients)*
Animal hospitals, kennels and pounds
Banks
Barber and beauty shops
Car wash
Civic administration
Clinic-outpatient ***SFM*** *(not classified as Group I-2.1)*
Dry cleaning and laundries: pick-up and delivery stations and self-service
Educational occupancies for students above the 12th grade
Electronic data processing
Laboratories: testing, research *and SFM instruction.*
Motor vehicle showrooms
Post offices
Print shops
Professional services (architects, attorneys, dentists, physicians, engineers, etc.)
Radio and television stations
Telephone exchanges
Training and skill development not within a school or academic program *(this shall include, but not be limited to, tutoring centers, martial arts studios, gymnastics, and similar uses regardless of the ages served, and where not classified as a Group A occupancy)*

Group C (CAMPS, ORGANIZED). *An organized camp is a site with programs and facilities established for the primary purpose of providing an outdoor group living experience with social, spiritual, educational or recreational objectives, for five days or more during one or more seasons of the year.*

[B] Educational Group E. Educational Group E occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, by more *than six* persons at any one time for educational purposes through the 12th grade.

> ***Exception:*** *A residence used as a home school for the children who normally reside at the residence. Such residences shall remain classified as Group R-2, or Group R-3 occupancies.*
>
> **Accessory to places of worship.** Religious educational rooms and religious auditoriums, which are accessory to places of religious worship in accordance with Section 508.3.1 of the *California Building Code* and have occupant loads of less than 100, shall be classified as Group A-3 occupancies.
>
> **Group E, day care facilities.** This group includes buildings and structures or portions thereof occupied by more than *six* children 2 years of age *and older* who receive educational, supervision or personal care services for less than 24 hours per day.
>
> > ***Exception:*** *A Day-care facility not otherwise classified as an R-3 occupancy, where occupants are not capable of responding to an emergency situation without physical assistance from the staff shall be classified as Group I-4.*

[B] Factory Industrial Group F. Factory Industrial Group F occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for assembling, disassembling, fabricating, finishing, manufacturing, packaging, repair or processing operations that are not classified as a Group H high-hazard or Group S storage occupancy.

> **Factory Industrial F-1 Moderate-hazard Occupancy.** Factory industrial uses which are not classified as Factory Industrial F-2 Low Hazard shall be classified as F-1 Moderate Hazard and shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Aircraft (manufacturing, not to include repair)
Appliances
Athletic equipment
Automobiles and other motor vehicles
Bakeries
Beverages; over 16-percent alcohol content
Bicycles
Boats
Brooms or brushes
Business machines
Cameras and photo equipment
Canvas or similar fabric
Carpets and rugs (includes cleaning)
Clothing
Construction and agricultural machinery
Disinfectants
Dry cleaning and dyeing
Electric generation plants
Electronics
Engines (including rebuilding)
Food processing and commercial kitchens not associated with restaurants, cafeterias and similar dining facilities
Furniture
Hemp products
Jute products
Laundries
Leather products
Machinery
Metals
Millwork (sash and door)
Motion picture and television production studio Sound Stages, Approved Production Facilities and production locations (without live audiences)
Musical instruments
Optical goods
Paper mills or products
Photographic film
Plastic products
Printing or publishing
Recreational vehicles
Refuse incineration
Shoes
Soaps and detergents
Textiles
Tobacco
Trailers
Upholstering
Wood; distillation
Woodworking (cabinet)

[B] Factory Industrial F-2 Low-hazard Occupancy. Factory industrial uses involving the fabrication or manufacturing of noncombustible materials which, during finishing, packaging or processing do not involve a significant fire hazard, shall be classified as Group F-2 occupancies and shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Beverages; up to and including 16-percent alcohol content
Brick and masonry
Ceramic products
Foundries
Glass products
Gypsum
Ice
Metal products (fabrication and assembly)

High-hazard Group H. High-hazard Group H occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, that involves the manufacturing, processing, generation or storage of materials that constitute a physical or health hazard in quantities in excess of those allowed in control areas complying with Section 5003.8.3, based on the maximum allowable quantity limits for control areas set forth in Tables 5003.1.1(1) and 5003.1.1(2). Hazardous occupancies are classified in Groups H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 and shall be in accordance with this code and the requirements of Section 415 of the *California Building Code*. Hazardous materials stored or used on top of roofs or canopies shall be classified as outdoor storage or use and shall comply with this code.

Exceptions: The following shall not be classified as Group H, but shall be classified as the occupancy that they most nearly resemble.

1. Buildings and structures occupied for the application of flammable finishes, provided that such buildings or areas conform to the requirements of Chapter 24 of this code and Section 416 of the *California Building Code*.
2. Wholesale and retail sales and storage of flammable and combustible liquids in mercantile occupancies conforming to Chapter 57.
3. Closed piping system containing flammable or combustible liquids or gases utilized for the operation of machinery or equipment.
4. Cleaning establishments that utilize combustible liquid solvents having a flash point of 140°F (60°C) or higher in closed systems employing equipment listed by an approved testing agency, provided that this occupancy is separated from all other areas of the building by 1-hour fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 of the *California Building Code* or 1-hour horizontal assemblies in accordance with Section 711 of the *California Building Code*, or both.
5. Cleaning establishments that utilize a liquid solvent having a flash point at or above 200°F (93°C).
6. Liquor stores and distributors without bulk storage.
7. Refrigeration systems.
8. The storage or utilization of materials for agricultural purposes on the premises.
9. Stationary batteries utilized for facility emergency power, uninterruptible power supply or telecommunication facilities, provided that the batteries are equipped with safety venting caps and ventilation is provided in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*.
10. Corrosives shall not include personal or household products in their original packaging used in retail display or commonly used building materials.
11. Buildings and structures occupied for aerosol storage shall be classified as Group S-1, provided that such buildings conform to the requirements of Chapter 51.
12. Display and storage of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or noncombustible liquid hazardous materials in quantities not exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area in Group M or S occupancies complying with Section 5003.8.3.5.
13. The storage of black powder, smokeless propellant and small arms primers in Groups M and R-3 and special industrial explosive devices in Groups B, F, M and S, provided such storage conforms to the quantity limits and requirements of this code.
14. *[SFM] Group L occupancies as defined in Section 443.1 of the California Building Code.*

High-hazard Group H-1. Buildings and structures containing materials that pose a detonation hazard shall be classified as Group H-1. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Detonable pyrophoric materials

Explosives:

Division 1.1
Division 1.2
Division 1.3
Division 1.4
Division 1.5
Division 1.6

Organic peroxides, unclassified detonable
Oxidizers, Class 4
Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 3 detonable, and Class 4

Occupancies containing explosives not classified as H-1. The following occupancies containing explosive materials shall be classified as follows:

1. Division 1.3 explosive materials that are used and maintained in a form where either confinement or configuration will not elevate the hazard from a mass fire hazard to mass explosion hazard shall be allowed in Group H-2 occupancies.
2. Articles, including articles packaged for shipment, that are not regulated as a Division 1.4 explosive under Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives regulations, or unpackaged articles used in process operations that do not propagate a detonation or deflagration between articles shall be allowed in H-3 occupancies.

High-hazard Group H-2. Buildings and structures containing materials that pose a deflagration hazard or a hazard from accelerated burning shall be classified as Group H-2. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Class I, II or IIIA flammable or combustible liquids which are used or stored in normally open containers or systems, or in closed containers or systems pressurized at more than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103.4 kPa)
Combustible dusts where manufactured, generated or used in such a manner that the concentration and conditions create a fire or explosion hazard based on information prepared in accordance with Section 414.1.3 of the *California Building Code*
Cryogenic fluids, flammable
Flammable gases

Organic peroxides, Class I
Oxidizers, Class 3, that are used or stored in normally open containers or systems, or in closed containers or systems pressurized at more than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103.4 kPa)
Pyrophoric liquids, solids and gases, nondetonable
Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 3, nondetonable
Water-reactive materials, Class 3

High-hazard Group H-3. Buildings and structures containing materials that readily support combustion or that pose a physical hazard shall be classified as Group H-3. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Class I, II or IIIA flammable or combustible liquids that are used or stored in normally closed containers or systems pressurized at 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103.4 kPa) or less
Combustible fibers, other than densely packed baled cotton
Consumer fireworks, 1.4G (Class C, Common)
Cryogenic fluids, oxidizing
Flammable solids
Organic peroxides, Class II and III
Oxidizers, Class 2
Oxidizers, Class 3, that are used or stored in normally closed containers or systems pressurized at 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103 kPa) or less
Oxidizing gases
Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 2
Water-reactive materials, Class 2

High-hazard Group H-4. Buildings and structures which contain materials that are health hazards shall be classified as Group H-4. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Corrosives
Highly toxic materials
Toxic materials

High-hazard Group H-5. Semiconductor fabrication facilities and comparable research and development areas in which hazardous production materials (HPM) are used and the aggregate quantity of materials is in excess of those listed in Tables 5003.1.1(1) and 5003.1.1(2) shall be classified as Group H-5. Such facilities and areas shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 415.10 of the *California Building Code.*

[B] Institutional Group I. Institutional Group I occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, in which care or supervision is provided to persons who are or are not capable of self preservation without physical assistance or in which persons are detained for penal or correctional purposes or in which the liberty of the occupants is restricted. Institutional occupancies shall be classified as Group I-1, I-2, I-3 or I-4. *Restraint shall not be permitted in any building except in Group I-3 occupancies constructed for such use. See California Building Code Section 408.1.1.*

Where occupancies house both ambulatory and nonambulatory persons, the more restrictive requirements shall apply.

Institutional Group I-1. *Not used. (See Group R-2.1 or Section 310.1 California Building Code)*

Institutional Group I-2. This occupancy shall include buildings and structures used for medical care on a 24-hour basis for more than five persons who are not capable of self-preservation *or classified as nonambulatory or bedridden.* This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Foster care facilities
Detoxification facilities
Hospitals
Nursing homes
Psychiatric hospitals

Institutional Group I-2.1 Ambulatory Health Care Facility. *A Healthcare facility that receives persons for outpatient medical care that may render the patient incapable of unassisted self-preservation and where each tenant space accommodates more than five such patients.*

Institutional Group I-3. This occupancy shall include buildings *or portions of buildings* and structures which are inhabited *by one or more* persons who are under restraint or security. An I-3 facility is occupied by persons who are generally incapable of self-preservation due to security measures not under the occupants' control *which includes persons restrained.* This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Correctional centers
Courthouse holding facilities
Detention centers
Detention treatment rooms
Jails
Juvenile halls
Prerelease centers
Prisons
Reformatories
Secure interview rooms
Temporary holding facilities

Buildings of Group I-3 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions indicated below:

Condition 1. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed from sleeping areas and other spaces where access or occupancy is permitted to the exterior via means of egress without restraint. A Condition 1 facility is permitted to be constructed as Group R.

Condition 2. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed from sleeping areas and any other occupied smoke compartment to one or more other smoke compartments. Egress to the exterior is impeded by locked exits.

Condition 3. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed within individual smoke compartments, such as within a residential unit comprised of individual sleeping units and group activity spaces, where egress is impeded by remote-controlled release of means of egress from such smoke compartment to another smoke compartment.

Condition 4. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is restricted from an occupied space. Remote-controlled release is provided to permit movement from sleeping units, activity spaces and other occupied areas within the smoke compartment to other smoke compartments.

Condition 5. This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is restricted from an occupied space. Staff-controlled manual release is provided to permit movement from sleeping units, activity spaces and other occupied areas within the smoke compartment to other smoke compartments.

Condition 6. *This occupancy condition shall include buildings containing only one temporary holding facility with five or less persons under restraint or security where the building is protected throughout with a monitored automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and where the temporary holding facility is protected throughout with an automatic fire alarm system with notification appliances. A Condition 6 building shall be permitted to be classified as a Group B occupancy.*

Condition 7. *This occupancy condition shall include buildings containing only one temporary holding facility with nine or less persons under restraint or security where limited to the first or second story, provided the building complies with Section 408.1.2.6 of the California Building Code. A Condition 7 building shall be permitted to be classified as a Group B occupancy.*

Condition 8. *This occupancy condition shall include buildings containing not more than four secure interview rooms located within the same fire area where not more than six occupants under restraint are located in the same fire area. A Condition 8 building shall be permitted to be classified as a Group B occupancy, provided the requirements in Section 408.1.2.7 of the California Building Code are met.*

Institutional Group I-4, day care facilities. This group shall include buildings and structures occupied by more than *six clients* of any age who receive custodial care for less than 24 hours by persons other than parents or guardians, relatives by blood, marriage, or adoption, and in a place other than the home of the *client* cared for. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Adult day care
Child day care

Classification as Group E. A child day care facility that provides care for more than *six* but no more than 100 children *under 2 years of age*, where the rooms in which the children are cared for are located on a level of exit discharge serving such rooms and each of these child care rooms has an exit door directly to the exterior, shall be classified as Group E.

Special provisions. *See Section 442.4 of the California Building Code for day care locations above or below the first story.*

Group L Laboratories. *[SFM] Group L occupancy includes the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof containing one or more laboratory suites as defined in Section 443 of the California Building Code.*

[B] Mercantile Group M. Mercantile Group M occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure or a portion thereof, for the display and sale of merchandise, and involves stocks of goods, wares or merchandise incidental to such purposes and accessible to the public. Mercantile occupancies shall include, but not be limited to, the following.

Department stores
Drug stores
Markets
Motor fuel-dispensing facilities
Retail or wholesale stores
Sales rooms

[B] Residential Group R. Residential Group R includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for sleeping purposes when not classified as an Institutional Group I or when not regulated by the *California Residential Code*. Residential occupancies shall include the following:

Residential Group R-1. Residential occupancies containing sleeping units where the occupants are primarily transient in nature, including:

Boarding houses (transient) with more than 10 occupants
Congregate residences (transient) with more than 10 occupants
Hotels (transient)
Motels (transient)

Residential Group R-2. Residential occupancies containing sleeping units or more than two dwelling units where the occupants are primarily permanent in nature, including:

Apartment houses
Boarding houses (nontransient) with more than 16 occupants
Congregate residences (nontransient) with more than 16 occupants
Convents
Dormitories
Fraternities and sororities
Hotels (nontransient)
Live/work units
Monasteries
Motels (nontransient)
Vacation timeshare properties

Residential Group R-2.1. *This occupancy shall include buildings, structures or parts thereof housing clients, on a 24-hour basis, who because of age, mental disability or other reasons, live in a supervised residential environment that provides personal care services.*

This occupancy may contain more than six nonambulatory and/or bedridden clients. (See Appendix Chapter 4, Section 425 Special Provisions For Licensed 24-Hour Care Facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1, or R-4 Occupancy). This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Assisted living facilities such as:
    Residential Care Facilities
    Residential Care Facilities for the Elderly (RCFE's)

Adult Residential Facilities
Congregate Living Health facilities
Group homes
Residential Care Facilities for the Chronically Ill
Congregate Living Health Facilities for the Terminally Ill

Social rehabilitation facilities such as:
Halfway houses
Community Correctional Centers
Community Correction Reentry Centers
Community Treatment Programs
Work Furlough Programs
Alcoholism or drug abuse recovery or treatment facilities

Residential Group R-3. Residential occupancies where the occupants are primarily permanent in nature and not classified as Group R-1, R-2, *R-2.1, R-3.1,* R-4 or I, including:

Boarding houses (nontransient) with 16 or fewer occupants
Boarding houses (transient) with 10 or fewer occupants
Buildings that do not contain more than two dwelling units
Adult care facilities that provide accommodations for *six or fewer clients* of any age for less than 24 hours.

Licensing categories that may use this classification include, but are not limited to:

Adult Day Programs

Child care facilities that provide accommodations for *six or fewer clients* of any age for less than 24 hours.

Licensing categories that may use this classification include, but are not limited to:
Day-Care Center for Mildly Ill Children
Adult Day Programs
Infant Care Center
School Age Child Day-Care Center.

Congregate residences (nontransient) with 16 or fewer occupants
Congregate residences (transient) with 10 or fewer occupants

Alcoholism or drug abuse recovery homes (ambulatory only)
Foster family homes (ambulatory only)

Family Day-Care Homes that provide accommodations for 14 or fewer children, in the provider's own home for less than 24-hours.

Adult care and child care facilities that are within a single-family home are permitted to comply with the *California Residential Code.*

Residential R-3.1. *This occupancy group may include facilities licensed by a governmental agency for a residentially based 24-hour care facility providing accommodations for six or fewer clients of any age. Clients may be classified as ambulatory, nonambulatory or bedridden. A Group R-3.1 occupancy shall meet the requirements for construction as defined for Group R-3, except as otherwise provided for in Appendix Chapter 4, Section 425, Special Provisions For Licensed 24-Hour Care Facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 Occupancy. This group may include:*

Adult Residential Facilities
Congregate Living Health Facilities
Foster Family Homes
Group Homes
Intermediate Care Facilities for the Developmentally Disabled Habilitative
Intermediate Care Facilities for the Developmentally Disabled Nursing
Nurseries for the full-time care of children under the age of six, but not including "infants" as defined in Section 202
Residential Care Facilities for the Elderly
Small Family Homes and Residential Care Facilities for the Chronically Ill

Exception: *Group Homes licensed by the Department of Social Services which provide nonmedical board, room and care for six or fewer ambulatory children or children two years of age or younger, and which do not have any nonambulatory clients shall not be subject to regulations found in Section Appendix Chapter 4, Section 425.*

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143 with respect to these exempted facilities, no city, county, or public district shall adopt or enforce any requirement for the prevention of fire or for the protection of life and property against fire and panic unless the requirement would be applicable to a structure regardless of the special occupancy. Nothing shall restrict the application of state or local housing standards to such facilities if the standards are applicable to residential occupancies and are not based on the use of the structure as a facility for ambulatory children. For the purpose of this exception, ambulatory children does not include relatives of the licensee or the licensee's spouse.

Residential Group R-4. This occupancy shall include buildings, structures or portions thereof for more than *six ambulatory clients*, but not more than 16 persons, excluding staff, who reside on a 24-hour basis in a supervised residential environment and receive custodial care. The persons receiving care are capable of self-preservation. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

This occupancy classification may include a maximum six nonambulatory or bedridden clients (see Appendix Chapter 4, Section 425, Special Provisions For Licensed 24-Hour Care Facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1, or R-4 Occupancy). Group R-4 occupancies shall include the following:

Assisted living facilities such as:
Residential care facilities
Residential Care Facilities for the Elderly (RCFE's)
Adult Residential Facilities
Congregate Living Health facilities
Group homes

Social rehabilitation facilities such as:
Halfway houses
Community Correctional Centers
Community Correction Reentry Centers

Community Treatment Programs
Work Furlough Programs
Alcoholism or drug abuse recovery or treatment facilities

Group R-4 occupancies shall meet the requirements for construction as defined for Group R-3, except as otherwise provided for in the *California Building Code*.

[B] Storage Group S. Storage Group S occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for storage that is not classified as a hazardous occupancy.

Moderate-hazard storage, Group S-1. Buildings occupied for storage uses that are not classified as Group S-2, including, but not limited to, storage of the following:

Aerosols, Levels 2 and 3
Aircraft hangar (storage and repair)
Bags: cloth, burlap and paper
Bamboos and rattan
Baskets
Belting: canvas and leather
Books and paper in rolls or packs
Boots and shoes
Buttons, including cloth covered, pearl or bone
Cardboard and cardboard boxes
Clothing, woolen wearing apparel
Cordage
Dry boat storage (indoor)
Furniture
Furs
Glues, mucilage, pastes and size
Grains
Horns and combs, other than celluloid
Leather
Linoleum
Lumber
Motor vehicle repair garages complying with the maximum allowable quantities of hazardous materials listed in Table 5003.1.1(1) (see Section 406.8 of the *California Building Code*)
Photo engravings
Resilient flooring
Silks
Soaps
Sugar
Tires, bulk storage of
Tobacco, cigars, cigarettes and snuff
Upholstery and mattresses
Wax candles

Low-hazard storage, Group S-2. Includes, among others, buildings used for the storage of noncombustible materials such as products on wood pallets or in paper cartons with or without single thickness divisions; or in paper wrappings. Such products are permitted to have a negligible amount of plastic trim, such as knobs, handles or film wrapping. Storage uses shall include, but not be limited to, storage of the following:

Asbestos
Beverages up to and including 16-percent alcohol in metal, glass or ceramic containers
Cement in bags
Chalk and crayons
Dairy products in nonwaxed coated paper containers
Dry cell batteries
Electrical coils
Electrical motors
Empty cans
Food products
Foods in noncombustible containers
Fresh fruits and vegetables in nonplastic trays or containers
Frozen foods
Glass
Glass bottles, empty or filled with noncombustible liquids
Gypsum board
Inert pigments
Ivory
Meats
Metal cabinets
Metal desks with plastic tops and trim
Metal parts
Metals
Mirrors
Oil-filled and other types of distribution transformers
Parking garages, open or enclosed
Porcelain and pottery
Stoves
Talc and soapstones
Washers and dryers

[B] Miscellaneous Group U. Buildings and structures of an accessory character and miscellaneous structures not classified in any specific occupancy shall be constructed, equipped and maintained to conform to the requirements of this code commensurate with the fire and life hazard incidental to their occupancy. Group U shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Agricultural buildings
Aircraft hangar, accessory to a one- or two-family residence (see Section 412.5 of the *California Building Code*)
Barns
Carports
Fences more than 6 feet (1829 mm) high
Grain silos, accessory to a residential occupancy
Greenhouses
Livestock shelters
Private garages
Retaining walls
Sheds
Stables
Tanks
Towers

[B] OCCUPANT LOAD. The number of persons for which the means of egress of a building or portion thereof is designed.

dance with Section 905 shall have a fire hydrant within 100 feet (30 m) of the fire department connections.

Exception: The distance shall be permitted to exceed 100 feet (30 m) where approved by the fire code official.

507.5.2 Inspection, testing and maintenance. Fire hydrant systems shall be subject to periodic tests as required by the fire code official. Fire hydrant systems shall be maintained in an operative condition at all times and shall be repaired where defective. Additions, repairs, alterations and servicing shall comply with approved standards.

507.5.3 Private fire service mains and water tanks. Private fire service mains and water tanks shall be periodically inspected, tested and maintained in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5.*

507.5.4 Obstruction. Unobstructed access to fire hydrants shall be maintained at all times. The fire department shall not be deterred or hindered from gaining immediate access to fire protection equipment or fire hydrants.

507.5.5 Clear space around hydrants. A 3-foot (914 mm) clear space shall be maintained around the circumference of fire hydrants, except as otherwise required or approved.

507.5.6 Physical protection. Where fire hydrants are subject to impact by a motor vehicle, guard posts or other approved means shall comply with Section 312.

SECTION 508
FIRE COMMAND CENTER

508.1 General. Where required by other sections of this code and in all buildings classified as high-rise buildings by the *California Building Code and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access*, a fire command center for fire department operations shall be provided and shall comply with Sections 508.1.1 through 508.1.5.

508.1.1 Location and access. The location and accessibility of the fire command center shall be approved by the fire chief.

508.1.2 Separation. The fire command center shall be separated from the remainder of the building by not less than a 1-hour fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *California Building Code* or horizontal assembly constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *California Building Code*, or both.

508.1.3 Size. The fire command center shall be a minimum of 200 square feet (19 m^2) in area with a minimum dimension of 10 feet (3048 mm).

508.1.4 Layout approval. A layout of the fire command center and all features required by this section to be contained therein shall be submitted for approval prior to installation.

508.1.5 Required features. The fire command center shall comply with NFPA 72 and shall contain the following features:

1. The emergency voice/alarm communication system control unit.
2. The fire department communications system.
3. *Fire alarm system zoning annunciator panel required by Section 907.6.3.3.*
4. Annunciator unit visually indicating the location of the elevators and whether they are operational.
5. Status indicators and controls for air distribution systems.
6. The fire-fighter's control panel required by Section 909.16 for smoke control systems installed in the building.
7. Controls for unlocking stairway doors simultaneously.
8. Sprinkler valve and water-flow detector display panels.
9. Emergency and standby power status indicators.
10. A telephone for fire department use with controlled access to the public telephone system.
11. Fire pump status indicators.
12. Schematic building plans indicating the typical floor plan and detailing the building core, means of egress, fire protection systems, fire-fighting equipment and fire department access, and the location of fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, smoke barriers and smoke partitions.
13. An approved Building Information Card that contains, but is not limited to, the following information:
    - 13.1. General building information that includes: property name, address, the number of floors in the building (above and below grade), use and occupancy classification (for mixed uses, identify the different types of occupancies on each floor), estimated building population (i.e., day, night, weekend);
    - 13.2. Building emergency contact information that includes: a list of the building's emergency contacts (e.g., building manager, building engineer, etc.) and their respective work phone number, cell phone number, and e-mail address;
    - 13.3. Building construction information that includes: the type of building construction (e.g., floors, walls, columns, and roof assembly);
    - 13.4. Exit stair information that includes: number of exit stairs in the building, each exit stair designation and floors served, location where each exit stair discharges, exit

stairs that are pressurized, exit stairs provided with emergency lighting, each exit stair that allows reentry, exit stairs providing roof access; elevator information that includes: number of elevator banks, elevator bank designation, elevator car numbers and respective floors that they serve, location of elevator machine rooms, location of sky lobby, location of freight elevator banks;

13.5. Building services and system information that includes: location of mechanical rooms, location of building management system, location and capacity of all fuel oil tanks, location of emergency generator, location of natural gas service;

13.6. Fire protection system information that includes: locations of standpipes, location of fire pump room, location of fire department connections, floors protected by automatic sprinklers, location of different types of automatic sprinkler systems installed (e.g., dry, wet, pre-action, etc.); and

13.7. Hazardous material information that includes: location of hazardous material, quantity of hazardous material.

14. Work table.
15. Generator supervision devices, manual start and transfer features.
16. Public address system, where specifically required by other sections of this code.
17. Elevator fire recall switch in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders.*
18. Elevator emergency or standby power selector switch(es), where emergency or standby power is provided.
19. *A master switch for unlocking elevator lobby doors permitted by Section 1008.1.9.12.*

Fire command centers shall not be used for the housing of any boiler, heating unit, generator, combustible storage, or similar hazardous equipment or storage.

508.1.6 Ventilation. *The fire command center shall be provided with an independent ventilation or air-conditioning system.*

SECTION 509
FIRE PROTECTION AND UTILITY EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION AND ACCESS

509.1 Identification. Fire protection equipment shall be identified in an approved manner. Rooms containing controls for air-conditioning systems, sprinkler risers and valves, or other fire detection, suppression or control elements shall be identified for the use of the fire department. Approved signs required to identify fire protection equipment and equipment location shall be constructed of durable materials, permanently installed and readily visible.

509.1.1 Utility identification. Where required by the fire code official, gas shutoff valves, electric meters, service switches and other utility equipment shall be clearly and legibly marked to identify the unit or space that it serves. Identification shall be made in an approved manner, readily visible and shall be maintained.

509.2 Equipment access. Approved access shall be provided and maintained for all fire protection equipment to permit immediate safe operation and maintenance of such equipment. Storage, trash and other materials or objects shall not be placed or kept in such a manner that would prevent such equipment from being readily accessible.

SECTION 510
EMERGENCY RESPONDER RADIO COVERAGE

510.1 Emergency responder radio coverage in new buildings. All new buildings shall have approved radio coverage for emergency responders within the building based upon the existing coverage levels of the public safety communication systems of the jurisdiction at the exterior of the building. This section shall not require improvement of the existing public safety communication systems.

Exceptions:

1. Where approved by the building official and the fire code official, a wired communication system in accordance with Section 907.2.13.2 shall be permitted to be installed or maintained in lieu of an approved radio coverage system.
2. Where it is determined by the fire code official that the radio coverage system is not needed.
3. In facilities where emergency responder radio coverage is required and such systems, components or equipment required could have a negative impact on the normal operations of that facility, the fire code official shall have the authority to accept an automatically activated emergency responder radio coverage system.

510.2 Emergency responder radio coverage in existing buildings. Existing buildings shall be provided with approved radio coverage for emergency responders as required in Chapter 11.

510.3 Permit required. A construction permit for the installation of or modification to emergency responder radio coverage systems and related equipment is required as specified in Section 105.7.5. Maintenance performed in accordance with this code is not considered a modification and does not require a permit.

510.4 Technical requirements. Systems, components, and equipment required to provide emergency responder radio coverage system shall comply with Sections 510.4.1 through 510.4.2.5.

CHAPTER 9

FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

SECTION 901
GENERAL

901.1 Scope. The provisions of California this chapter shall specify where fire protection systems are required and shall apply to the design, installation, inspection, operation, testing and maintenance of all fire protection systems.

901.2 Construction documents. The fire code official shall have the authority to require construction documents and calculations for all fire protection systems and to require permits be issued for the installation, rehabilitation or modification of any fire protection system. Construction documents for fire protection systems shall be submitted for review and approval prior to system installation.

901.2.1 Statement of compliance. Before requesting final approval of the installation, where required by the fire code official, the installing contractor shall furnish a written statement to the fire code official that the subject fire protection system has been installed in accordance with approved plans and has been tested in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications and the appropriate installation standard. Any deviations from the design standards shall be noted and copies of the approvals for such deviations shall be attached to the written statement.

901.3 Permits. Permits shall be required as set forth in Sections 105.6 and 105.7.

901.4 Installation. *F*ire protection systems shall be maintained in accordance with the original installation standards for that system. Required systems shall be extended, altered or augmented as necessary to maintain and continue protection whenever the building is altered, remodeled or added to. Alterations to fire protection systems shall be done in accordance with applicable standards.

901.4.1 Required fire protection systems. Fire protection systems required by this code or the *California Building Code* shall be installed, repaired, operated, tested and maintained in accordance with this code.

901.4.2 Nonrequired fire protection systems. Any fire protection system or portion thereof not required by this code or the *California Building Code* shall be allowed to be furnished for partial or complete protection provided such installed system meets the applicable requirements of this code and the *California Building Code*.

901.4.3 Fire areas. Where buildings, or portions thereof, are divided into fire areas so as not to exceed the limits established for requiring a fire protection system in accordance with this chapter, such fire areas shall be separated by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the California Building Code or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *California Building Code*, or both, having a fire-resistance rating of not less than that determined in accordance with Section 707.3.10 of the *California Building Code*.

901.4.4 Additional fire protection systems. In occupancies of a hazardous nature, where special hazards exist in addition to the normal hazards of the occupancy, or where the fire code official determines that access for fire apparatus is unduly difficult, the fire code official shall have the authority to require additional safeguards. Such safeguards include, but shall not be limited to, the following: automatic fire detection systems, fire alarm systems, automatic fire-extinguishing systems, standpipe systems, or portable or fixed extinguishers. Fire protection equipment required under this section shall be installed in accordance with this code and the applicable referenced standards.

901.4.5 Appearance of equipment. Any device that has the physical appearance of life safety or fire protection equipment but that does not perform that life safety or fire protection function shall be prohibited.

901.4.6 Pump and riser room size. Fire pump and automatic sprinkler system riser rooms shall be designed with adequate space for all equipment necessary for the installation, as defined by the manufacturer, with sufficient working space around the stationary equipment. Clearances around equipment to elements of permanent construction, including other installed equipment and appliances, shall be sufficient to allow inspection, service, repair or replacement without removing such elements of permanent construction or disabling the function of a required fire-resistance-rated assembly. Fire pump and automatic sprinkler system riser rooms shall be provided with a door(s) and an unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the largest piece of equipment.

901.5 Installation acceptance testing. Fire detection and alarm systems, fire-extinguishing systems, fire hydrant systems, fire standpipe systems, fire pump systems, private fire service mains and all other fire protection systems and appurtenances thereto shall be subject to acceptance tests as contained in the installation standards and as approved by the fire code official. The fire code official shall be notified before any required acceptance testing.

901.5.1 Occupancy. It shall be unlawful to occupy any portion of a building or structure until the required fire detection, alarm and suppression systems have been tested and approved.

901.6 Inspection, testing and maintenance. Fire detection, alarm, and extinguishing systems, mechanical smoke exhaust systems, and smoke and heat vents shall be maintained in an operative condition at all times, and shall be replaced or repaired where defective. Nonrequired fire protection systems and equipment shall be inspected, tested and maintained or removed.

All fire alarm systems, fire detection systems, automatic sprinkler or extinguishing systems, communication systems, and all other equipment, material or systems required by *these regulations shall be maintained in an operable condition at all times in accordance with this code and California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1. Upon disruption or diminishment of the fire protective qualities of such equipment, material or systems, immediate action shall be instituted to effect a reestablishment of such equipment, material or systems to their original normal and operational condition.*

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §1.14] Maintenance.

Every fire alarm system or device, sprinkler system, fire extinguisher, fire hose, fire-resistive assembly or any other fire safety assembly, device, material or equipment installed and retained in service in any building or structure subject to California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1 regulations shall be maintained in an operable condition at all times in accordance with California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1 regulations and with their intended use.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §3.24] Maintenance of Equipment.

All fire alarm systems, fire detection systems, automatic sprinkler or extinguishing systems, communication systems, and all other equipment, material or systems required by California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1 shall be maintained in an operable condition at all times. Upon disruption or diminishment of the fire protective qualities of such equipment, material or systems, immediate action shall be instituted to effect a reestablishment of such equipment material or systems to their original normal and operational condition.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §904(a)] Required Inspection, Testing and Maintenance Frequencies.

(a) All automatic fire extinguishing systems, including systems installed as an alternate to other building requirements, shall be inspected, tested and maintained in accordance with the following frequencies. Local authorities may require more frequent inspection, testing and maintenance and additional procedures.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §904(a)(1)] Required Inspection, Testing and Maintenance Frequencies.

(1) Water-based fire protection systems shall be inspected, tested and maintained in accordance with the frequencies required by NFPA 25 (2011 edition) including Annexes A, B, C, D, E, F and G as amended by the State of California. (Published as NFPA 25, 2013 California Edition.)

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §904(b)] Required Inspection, Testing and Maintenance Frequencies.

(b) When proof of the installation date of standpipe systems or automatic fire sprinkler systems cannot be furnished, such systems shall receive initial testing and maintenance by July 1, 1985.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §904.2(a)] Testing and Maintenance Requirements.

(a) All testing and maintenance on automatic fire extinguishing systems in accordance with Health & Safety Code Section 13195 shall be performed by those licensed in accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 13196.5.

Exceptions:

(1) The State Fire Marshal may waive, in writing, licensing of fire departments which conduct fire sprinkler and standpipe system testing and maintenance.

(2) Service on fire alarm systems and industrial systems as specified in Health and Safety Code Sections 13196.5(b) and (c) may be conducted without a license.

(3) Testing and maintenance on automatic fire extinguishing systems exempted in writing by the State Fire Marshal, when the building owner or occupant has the staff and equipment to conduct testing and maintenance.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §904.2(b)] Testing and Maintenance Requirements.

(b) Any testing and maintenance of automatic fire extinguishing systems shall be performed in accordance with these requirements.

Exceptions:

(1) The State Fire Marshal may waive, in writing, the requirement that testing and maintenance be performed in accordance with these requirements when a licensee can demonstrate that a system cannot functionally be tested and maintained in accordance with the California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5.

(2) If at any time a licensee encounters a specialized or modified system which cannot be tested and maintained in accordance with California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5, the licensee shall contact the State Fire Marshal and test and maintain the system as directed.

(A) The intent of this section is to cover automatic fire extinguishing systems as originally designed, installed and approved by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. It is not, however, intended to require that such systems be upgraded to current adopted standards.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §904.2(h)] Testing and Maintenance Requirements.

(h) At the time of testing and maintenance, building management shall be consulted to avoid unnecessary disturbance of normal building operation.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §904.2(i)] Testing and Maintenance Requirements.

(i) The licensee shall contact the local fire authority having jurisdiction prior to testing and maintenance of a sys-

In buildings where ambulatory care is provided on levels other than the level of exit discharge, an automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout the entire floor where such care is provided as well as all floors below, and all floors between the level of ambulatory care and the nearest level of exit discharge, including the level of exit discharge.

903.2.3 Group E. *A*n automatic sprinkler system shall be provided for Group E occupancies as follows:

1. Throughout all Group E fire areas greater than 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2) in area.
2. Throughout every portion of educational buildings below the lowest level of exit discharge serving that portion of the building.

   Exception: An automatic sprinkler system is not required in any area below the lowest level of exit discharge serving that area where every classroom throughout the building has at least one exterior exit door at ground level.
3. *In rooms or areas with special hazards such as laboratories, vocational shops and other such areas where hazardous materials in quantities not exceeding the maximum allowable quantity are used or stored.*
4. *Throughout any Group E structure greater than 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2) in area, which contains more than one fire area, and which is separated into two or more buildings by fire walls of less than 4-hour fire-resistance rating without openings.*
5. *For public school state-funded construction projects see Section 903.2.19.*

903.2.4 Group F-1. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all buildings containing a Group F-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. A Group F-1 fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2).
2. A Group F-1 fire area is located more than three stories above grade plane.
3. The combined area of all Group F-1 fire areas on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m^2).
4. A Group F-1 occupancy used for the manufacture of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 2,500 square feet (232 m^2).

903.2.4.1 Woodworking operations. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all Group F-1 occupancy fire areas that contain woodworking operations in excess of 2,500 square feet in area (232 m^2) which generate finely divided combustible waste or which use finely divided combustible materials. *[SFM] A fire wall of less than 4-hour fire-resistance rating without openings, or any fire wall with openings, shall not be used to establish separate fire areas.*

903.2.5 Group H. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be provided in high-hazard occupancies as required in Sections 903.2.5.1 through 903.2.5.3.

903.2.5.1 General. An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed in Group H occupancies.

903.2.5.2 Group H-5 occupancies. An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout buildings containing Group H-5 occupancies. The design of the sprinkler system shall not be less than that required under the *California Building Code* for the occupancy hazard classifications in accordance with Table 903.2.5.2.

Where the design area of the sprinkler system consists of a corridor protected by one row of sprinklers, the maximum number of sprinklers required to be calculated is 13.

TABLE 903.2.5.2
GROUP H-5 SPRINKLER DESIGN CRITERIA

LOCATION	OCCUPANCY HAZARD CLASSIFICATION
Fabrication areas	Ordinary Hazard Group 2
Service corridors	Ordinary Hazard Group 2
Storage rooms without dispensing	Ordinary Hazard Group 2
Storage rooms with dispensing	Extra Hazard Group 2
Corridors	Ordinary Hazard Group 2

903.2.5.3 Pyroxylin plastics. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in buildings, or portions thereof, where cellulose nitrate film or pyroxylin plastics are manufactured, stored or handled in quantities exceeding 100 pounds (45 kg).

903.2.5.4 Group H occupancies located above the 10th story. *The fire sprinkler system shall be designed and zoned to provide separate indication upon waterflow for each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier above the 10th story.*

903.2.6 Group I. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings with a Group I fire area.

Exceptions:

1. *Those areas exempted by Section 407.6 of the California Building Code.*
2. *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13113 (d), Group I-2 occupancies, or any alterations thereto, located in Type IA construction in existence on March 4, 1972.*

903.2.6.1 Group I-2. *An existing, unsprinklered Group I-2, nurses' station open to fire-resistive exit access corridors shall be protected by an automatic sprinkler system located directly above the nurses' station. It* *shall be permitted to connect the automatic sprinkler system to the domestic water service.*

903.2.6.2 Group I-3. *Every building, or portion thereof, where inmates or persons are in custody or restrained shall be protected by an automatic sprinkler system conforming to NFPA 13. The main sprinkler control valve or valves and all other control valves in the system shall be locked in the open position and electrically supervised so that at least an audible and visual alarm will sound at a constantly attended location when valves are closed. The sprinkler branch piping serving cells may be embedded in the concrete construction.*

903.2.7 Group M. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings containing a Group M occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. A Group M fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2).
2. A Group M fire area is located more than three stories above grade plane.
3. The combined area of all Group M fire areas on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m^2).
4. A Group M occupancy used for the display and sale of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m^2).
5. *[SFM] The structure exceeds 24,000 square feet (465 m^2), contains more than one fire area containing a Group M occupancy, and is separated into two or more buildings by fire walls of less than 4-hour fire-resistance rating without openings.*

903.2.7.1 High-piled storage. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided as required in Chapter 32 in all buildings of Group M where storage of merchandise is in high-piled or rack storage arrays.

903.2.8 Group R. An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3 shall be provided throughout all buildings with a Group R fire area.

Exceptions:

1. *Existing Group R-3 occupancies converted to Group R-3.1 occupancies not housing bedridden clients, not housing nonambulatory clients above the first floor, and not housing clients above the second floor.*
2. *Existing Group R-3 occupancies converted to Group R-3.1 occupancies housing only one bedridden client and complying with Section 425.8.3.3 of the California Building Code.*
3. *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code, Section 13113, occupancies housing ambulatory children only, none of whom are mentally ill or mentally retarded, and the buildings or portions thereof in which such children are housed are not more than two stories in height, and buildings or portions thereof housing such children have an automatic fire alarm system activated by approved smoke detectors.*
4. *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code, Section 13143.6, occupancies licensed for protective social care which house ambulatory clients only, none of whom is a child (under the age of 18 years), or who is elderly (65 years of age or over).*

When not used in accordance with Section 504.2 or 506.3 of the California Building Code, an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall be allowed in Group R-2.1 occupancies.

An automatic sprinkler system designed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall not be utilized in Group R-2.1 or R-4 occupancies.

903.2.8.1 Group R-3 congregate residences. An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in Group R-3 congregate living facilities with 16 or fewer residents.

903.2.9 Group S-1. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all buildings containing a Group S-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. A Group S-1 fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m^2).
2. A Group S-1 fire area is located more than three stories above grade plane.
3. The combined area of all Group S-1 fire areas on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m^2).
4. A Group S-1 fire area used for the storage of commercial trucks or buses where the fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m^2).
5. A Group S-1 occupancy used for the storage of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 2,500 square feet (232 m^2).

903.2.9.1 Repair garages. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all buildings used as repair garages in accordance with Section 406.8 of the *California Building Code*, as shown:

1. Buildings having two or more stories above grade plane, including basements, with a fire area con-

903.2.12 During construction. Automatic sprinkler systems required during construction, alteration and demolition operations shall be provided in accordance with Section 3313.

903.2.13 Reserved.

903.2.14 Motion picture and television production studio sound stages, approved production facilities and production locations.

903.2.14.1 Existing Sound Stages and Approved Production Facilities. *All existing sound stages and approved production facilities equipped with an automatic fire sprinkler system shall be maintained in accordance with the provisions in this chapter.*

903.2.14.2 New sound stages. *All new sound stages shall be equipped with an approved automatic fire sprinkler system. The system shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of the California Fire Code, Chapter 9, and shall meet the minimum design requirements of an Extra Hazard, Group 2 system.*

903.2.15 Automatic sprinkler system – existing high-rise buildings. *Regardless of any other provisions of these regulations, every existing high-rise building of Type II-B, Type III-B or Type V-B construction shall be provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system conforming to NFPA 13.*

903.2.15.1 Existing R-1 and R-2 high-rise buildings fire-extinguishing systems. *Automatic fire-extinguishing systems installed in any existing high-rise structure in which a Group R-1 or a Group R-2 occupancy is located shall have an approved flow indicator electrically interconnected to the required fire alarm system.*

903.2.16 Group L occupancies. *An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout buildings housing Group L occupancies. Sprinkler system design for research laboratories and similar areas of a Group L occupancy shall not be less than that required for Ordinary Hazard Group 2 with a design area of not less than 3,000 square feet (279* m^2*).*

In mixed occupancies, portions of floors or buildings not classified as Group L occupancies shall be provided with sprinkler protection designed of not less than that required for Ordinary Hazard Group 1 with a design area of not less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2*).*

903.2.16.1 Group L occupancies located above the 10th story. *The automatic sprinkler system shall be designed and zoned to provide separate indication upon water-flow for each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier above the 10th story.*

903.2.17 Fixed guideway transit systems.

903.2.17.1 Automatic sprinkler system. *An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed in all stations of fixed guideway transit systems.*

Exceptions:

1. *Guideways when the closest sprinkler heads to the guideway are within 3 feet (914 mm) of the edge, over the platform and spaced 6 feet (1829 mm) on center, parallel to the guideway.*
2. *Station agent booths not exceeding 150 square feet (13.9* m^2*) in area, when provided with an approved smoke detector connected to the building fire alarm system.*
3. *Power substations.*
4. *Machinery rooms, electrical rooms and train control rooms protected by an approved automatic fixed fire-extinguishing system.*
5. *Open stations.*
6. *Station platform areas open to three or more sides.*

903.2.17.2 Station guideway deluge system. *Underground stations and stations in open cuts with walls 5 feet (1524 mm) above the top of the running rail and with a raised platform shall be provided with an under-vehicle guideway manually activated deluge sprinkler system. In open cut stations, such system shall be provided in guideways which are situated between a raised platform edge and a retaining wall.*

903.2.17.2.1 *Systems shall be provided along the entire length of track at each station platform.*

903.2.17.2.2 *Deluge nozzles with caps shall be located in the approximate center of track with spacing designed to completely wet the undersides of the vehicle at the applied density.*

903.2.17.2.3 *System density shall be a minimum of 0.19 gallon per minute (gpm) per square foot (0.72 L/m per* m^2*) for the design area. When more than one zone is provided, two adjacent zones are required to be considered operating for calculating purposes.*

903.2.17.2.4 *Deluge systems shall be directly connected to a water supply capable of supplying the required flow rate for a minimum 30-minute duration.*

903.2.17.2.5 *Controls or manually operable valves shall be in a location acceptable to the Fire Code Official. All deluge systems shall be monitored by the station fire alarm system.*

903.2.17.2.6 *Each valve shall be monitored by a separate circuit. The alarm panel shall be located in an area normally occupied by station personnel or signals shall be transmitted to the operations control center (OCC).*

903.2.18 Group U private garages and carports accessory to Group R-3 occupancies. *Carports with habitable space above and attached garages, accessory to Group R-3 occupancies, shall be protected by residential fire sprinklers in accordance with this section. Residential fire sprinklers shall be connected to, and installed in accordance with, an automatic residential fire sprinkler system that complies with Section R313 of the California Residential Code or with NFPA 13D. Fire sprinklers shall be residential sprinklers or quick-response sprinklers, designed to provide a minimum density of 0.05* gpm/ft^2 *(2.04 mm/*

min) over the area of the garage and/or carport, but not to exceed two sprinklers for hydraulic calculation purposes. Garage doors shall not be considered obstructions with respect to sprinkler placement.

Exception: *An automatic residential fire sprinkler system shall not be required when additions or alterations are made to existing carports and/or garages that do not have an automatic residential fire sprinkler system installed in accordance with this section.*

903.2.19 Public school state-funded construction projects for kindergarten through 12th grade — automatic sprinkler system requirements.

903.2.19.1 New public school campus. *An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in all occupancies. The provisions of this section shall apply to any public school project consisting of one or more buildings on a new school campus and receiving state funds pursuant to Leroy F. Greene School Facilities Act of 1998, California Education Code, Sections 17070.10 through 17079. For purposes of this section, new campus refers to a school site, where an application for construction of original buildings was made to DSA on or after July 1, 2002.*

Exceptions:

1. *A relocatable building that is sited with the intent that it be at the site for less than three years and is sited upon a temporary foundation in a manner that is designed to permit easy removal. Also see CCR, Title 24, Part 1, California Administrative Code, Section 4-314 for definition of relocatable building.*
2. *Detached buildings designed and used for non-instructional purposes that meet the applicable requirements for that occupancy. Buildings would include, but not be limited to:*

    Concession stand
    Press box
    Restroom facilities
    Shade structure
    Snack bar
    Storage building
    Ticket booth

903.2.19.1.1 *Sprinklers shall be installed in spaces where the ceiling creates a "ceiling-plenum" or the space above the ceiling is utilized for environmental air.*

903.2.19.1.2 Fire-resistive substitution for new campus. *A new public school campus shall be entitled to include in the design and construction documents all of the applicable fire-resistive construction substitutions as permitted by this code.*

903.3 Installation requirements. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 903.3.1 through *903.3.8.*

903.3.1 Standards. Sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, unless otherwise permitted by Sections 903.3.1.2 and 903.3.1.3 and other chapters of this code, as applicable.

903.3.1.1 NFPA 13 sprinkler systems. Where the provisions of this code require that a building or portion thereof be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with this section, sprinklers shall be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13 *as amended in Chapter 80* except as provided in Section 903.3.1.1.1.

903.3.1.1.1 Exempt locations. *In other than Group I-2, I-2.1 and I-3 occupancies,* automatic sprinklers shall not be required in the following rooms or areas where such rooms or areas are protected with an approved automatic fire detection system in accordance with Section 907.2 that will respond to visible or invisible particles of combustion. Sprinklers shall not be omitted from any room merely because it is damp, of fire-resistance rated construction or contains electrical equipment.

1. Any room where the application of water, or flame and water, constitutes a serious life or fire hazard.
2. Any room or space where sprinklers are considered undesirable because of the nature of the contents, when approved by the fire code official.
3. Fire service access elevator machine rooms and machinery spaces.
4. Machine rooms and machinery spaces associated with occupant evacuation elevators designed in accordance with Section 3008 of the *California Building Code*.
5. *Spaces or areas in telecommunications buildings used exclusively for telecommunications equipment, and associated electrical power distribution equipment, provided those spaces or areas are equipped throughout with an automatic smoke detection system in accordance with Section 907.2 and are separated from the remainder of the building by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the California Building Code or not less than 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 712 of the California Building Code, or both.*
6. *Solar photovoltaic panel structures with no use underneath. Signs may be provided, as determined by the enforcing agency prohibiting any use underneath including storage.*
7. *Solar photovoltaic (PV) panels supported by framing that have sufficient uniformly distributed and unobstructed openings throughout the top of the array (horizontal plane) to allow heat and gases to escape, as determined by the enforcing agency.*

903.3.1.2 NFPA 13R sprinkler systems. Automatic sprinkler systems in Group R occupancies up to and including four stories in height shall be permitted to be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13*R as amended in Chapter 80.*

903.3.1.2.1 Balconies and decks. Sprinkler protection shall be provided for exterior balconies, decks and ground floor patios of dwelling units where the building is of Type V construction, provided there is a roof or deck above. Sidewall sprinklers that are used to protect such areas shall be permitted to be located such that their deflectors are within 1 inch (25 mm) to 6 inches (152 mm) below the structural members and a maximum distance of 14 inches (356 mm) below the deck of the exterior balconies and decks that are constructed of open wood joist construction.

903.3.1.3 NFPA 13D sprinkler systems. Automatic sprinkler systems installed in one and two-family dwellings, Group R-3 congregate living facilities and townhouses shall be permitted to be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13D*, as amended in Chapter 80.*

903.3.2 Quick-response and residential sprinklers. Where automatic sprinkler systems are required by this code, quick-response or residential automatic sprinklers shall be installed in the following areas in accordance with Section 903.3.1 and their listings:

1. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing care recipient sleeping units in Group I-2 in accordance with the *California Building Code.*
2. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing treatment rooms in ambulatory care facilities.
3. Dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R occupancies.
4. Light-hazard occupancies as defined in NFPA 13.

903.3.3 Obstructed locations. Automatic sprinklers shall be installed with due regard to obstructions that will delay activation or obstruct the water distribution pattern. Automatic sprinklers shall be installed in or under covered kiosks, displays, booths, concession stands or equipment that exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm) in width. Not less than a 3-foot (914 mm) clearance shall be maintained between automatic sprinklers and the top of piles of combustible fibers.

Exception: Kitchen equipment under exhaust hoods protected with a fire-extinguishing system in accordance with Section 904.

903.3.4 Actuation. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be automatically actuated unless specifically provided for in this code.

903.3.5 Water supplies. Water supplies for automatic sprinkler systems shall comply with this section and the standards referenced in Section 903.3.1. The potable water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with *Health and Safety Code, Section 13114.7.*

903.3.5.1 Domestic services. Where the domestic service provides the water supply for the automatic sprinkler system, the supply shall be in accordance with this section.

903.3.5.1.1 Limited area sprinkler systems. Limited area sprinkler systems serving fewer than 20 sprinklers on any single connection are permitted to be connected to the domestic service where a wet automatic standpipe is not available. Limited area sprinkler systems connected to domestic water supplies shall comply with each of the following requirements:

1. Valves shall not be installed between the domestic water riser control valve and the sprinklers.

   Exception: An approved indicating control valve supervised in the open position in accordance with Section 903.4.

2. The domestic service shall be capable of supplying the simultaneous domestic demand and the sprinkler demand required to be hydraulically calculated by NFPA 13, NFPA 13D or NFPA 13R.

903.3.5.1.2 Residential combination services. A single combination water supply shall be allowed provided that the domestic demand is added to the sprinkler demand as required by NFPA 13R.

903.3.5.2 Secondary water supply. An automatic secondary on-site water supply having a *usable* capacity *of* not less than the hydraulically calculated sprinkler demand, including the hose stream requirement, shall be provided for high-rise buildings *and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access* in Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F as determined by the *California Building Code.* An additional fire pump shall not be required for the secondary water supply unless needed to provide the minimum design intake pressure at the suction side of the fire pump supplying the automatic sprinkler system. The secondary water supply shall have a duration of not less than 30 minutes *or* as determined by the occupancy hazard classification in accordance with NFPA 13, *whichever is greater. The Class I standpipe system demand shall not be required to be included in the secondary on-site water supply calculations. In no case shall the secondary on-site water supply be less than 15,000 gallons.*

Exception: Existing buildings.

903.3.6 Hose threads. Fire hose threads and fittings used in connection with automatic sprinkler systems shall be as prescribed by the fire code official.

903.3.7 Fire department connections. The location of fire department connections shall be approved by the fire code official.

903.3.8 Floor control valves. *Floor control valves and waterflow detection assemblies shall be installed at each floor where any of the following occur:*

1. *Buildings where the floor level of the highest story is located more than 30 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.*
2. *Buildings that are four or more stories in height.*
3. *Buildings that are two or more stories below the highest level of fire department vehicle access.*

Exception: *Group R-3 and R-3.1 occupancies floor control valves and waterflow detection assemblies shall not be required.*

903.4 Sprinkler system supervision and alarms. All valves controlling the water supply for automatic sprinkler systems, pumps, tanks, water levels and temperatures, critical air pressures and water-flow switches on all sprinkler systems shall be electrically supervised by a listed fire alarm control unit.

Exceptions:

1. Automatic sprinkler systems protecting one- and two-family dwellings.
2. Limited area systems serving fewer than 20 sprinklers.
3. Automatic sprinkler systems installed in accordance with NFPA 13R where a common supply main is used to supply both domestic water and the automatic sprinkler system, and a separate shutoff valve for the automatic sprinkler system is not provided.
4. Jockey pump control valves that are sealed or locked in the open position.
5. Control valves to commercial kitchen hoods, paint spray booths or dip tanks that are sealed or locked in the open position.
6. Valves controlling the fuel supply to fire pump engines that are sealed or locked in the open position.
7. Trim valves to pressure switches in dry, preaction and deluge sprinkler systems that are sealed or locked in the open position.

903.4.1 Monitoring. Alarm, supervisory and trouble signals shall be distinctly different and shall be automatically transmitted to an approved supervising station or, when approved by the fire code official, shall sound an audible signal at a constantly attended location.

Exceptions:

1. Underground key or hub valves in roadway boxes provided by the municipality or public utility are not required to be monitored.
2. Backflow prevention device test valves located in limited area sprinkler system supply piping shall be locked in the open position. In occupancies required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, the backflow preventer valves shall be electrically supervised by a tamper switch installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and separately annunciated.

903.4.2 Alarms. *One exterior approved* audible device, located on the exterior of the building in an approved location, shall be connected to each automatic sprinkler system. Such sprinkler water-flow alarm devices shall be activated by water flow equivalent to the flow of a single sprinkler of the smallest orifice size installed in the system. Where a fire alarm system is installed, actuation of the automatic sprinkler system shall actuate the building fire alarm system. *Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required except when required by Section 907.*

903.4.3 Floor control valves. Approved supervised indicating control valves shall be provided at the point of connection to the riser on each floor in high-rise buildings *and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.*

903.5 Testing and maintenance. Sprinkler systems shall be tested and maintained in accordance with Section 901.

903.6 Where required in existing buildings and structures. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in existing buildings and structures where required in Chapter 11.

SECTION 904
ALTERNATIVE AUTOMATIC FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

904.1 General. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems, other than automatic sprinkler systems, shall be designed, installed, inspected, tested and maintained in accordance with the provisions of this section and the applicable referenced standards.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §904(a)(2)] Required Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance Frequencies.

(2) Engineered and pre-engineered fixed extinguishing systems shall be inspected, tested and maintained at least semi-annually, and immediately after a system activation.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §904(c)] Required Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance Frequencies.

(c) Engineered and pre-engineered fixed extinguishing systems, regardless of installation date, shall be inspected, tested and maintained within the time periods specified in California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Section 904(a)(2) above.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §904.7(a) through (c)] Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance Requirements for Engineered and Pre-engineered Fixed Extinguishing Systems.

Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance shall be performed in accordance with:

(a) California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Section 904(a)(2),

3. Automatic fire sprinkler systems.

All existing dry chemical and wet chemical extinguishing systems shall comply with UL 300,

> ***Exception:*** *Public schools kitchens, without deep-fat fryers, shall be upgraded to a UL 300 compliant system during state-funded modernization projects that are under the jurisdiction of the Division of the State Architect.*

All systems shall be installed in accordance with the California Mechanical Code, appropriate adopted standards, their listing and the manufacturers' installation instructions.

> ***Exception:*** Factory-built commercial cooking recirculating systems that are tested, *listed, labeled and installed* in accordance with UL 710B and the *California Mechanical Code.*

904.11.1 Manual system operation. A manual actuation device shall be located at or near a means of egress from the cooking area a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) and a maximum of 20 feet (6096 mm) from the kitchen exhaust system. The manual actuation device shall be installed not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) nor less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the floor and shall clearly identify the hazard protected. The manual actuation shall require a maximum force of 40 pounds (178 N) and a maximum movement of 14 inches (356 mm) to actuate the fire suppression system.

> **Exception:** Automatic sprinkler systems shall not be required to be equipped with manual actuation means.

904.11.2 System interconnection. The actuation of the fire extinguishing system shall automatically shut down the fuel or electrical power supply to the cooking equipment. The fuel and electrical supply reset shall be manual.

904.11.3 Carbon dioxide systems. When carbon dioxide systems are used, there shall be a nozzle at the top of the ventilating duct. Additional nozzles that are symmetrically arranged to give uniform distribution shall be installed within vertical ducts exceeding 20 feet (6096 mm) and horizontal ducts exceeding 50 feet (15 240 mm). Dampers shall be installed at either the top or the bottom of the duct and shall be arranged to operate automatically upon activation of the fire-extinguishing system. When the damper is installed at the top of the duct, the top nozzle shall be immediately below the damper. Automatic carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing systems shall be sufficiently sized to protect all hazards venting through a common duct simultaneously.

904.11.3.1 Ventilation system. Commercial-type cooking equipment protected by an automatic carbon dioxide extinguishing system shall be arranged to shut off the ventilation system upon activation.

904.11.4 Special provisions for automatic sprinkler systems. Automatic sprinkler systems protecting commercial-type cooking equipment shall be supplied from a separate, readily accessible, indicating-type control valve that is identified.

904.11.4.1 Listed sprinklers. Sprinklers used for the protection of fryers shall be tested in accordance with UL 199E, listed for that application and installed in accordance with their listing.

904.11.5 Portable fire extinguishers for commercial cooking equipment. Portable fire extinguishers shall be provided *and maintained in accordance with California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3.*

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §573(a) through (c)] Fire Extinguisher Size and Placement for Commercial Cooking Operations.

(a) Fire extinguishers with a Class K rating shall be provided for hazards where there is a potential for fires involving combustible cooking media (vegetable or animal oils and fats).

(b) Maximum travel distance shall not exceed 30 feet (9.15 m) from the hazard to the extinguishers.

(c) Additional fire extinguishers, required for the control of other classes of fires, shall be provided for commercial cooking areas as required by California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Section 567.

904.11.5.1 Portable fire extinguishers for solid fuel cooking appliances. All solid fuel cooking appliances, whether or not under a hood, with fireboxes 5 cubic feet (0.14 m^3) or less in volume shall have a minimum 2.5-gallon (9 L) or two 1.5-gallon (6 L) Class K wet-chemical portable fire extinguishers located in accordance with Section 904.11.5.

904.11.5.2 Class K portable fire extinguishers for deep fat fryers. When hazard areas include deep fat fryers, listed Class K portable fire extinguishers shall be provided *in accordance with California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3 and* as follows:

1. For up to four fryers having a maximum cooking medium capacity of 80 pounds (36.3 kg) each: one Class K portable fire extinguisher of a minimum 1.5-gallon (6 L) capacity.
2. For every additional group of four fryers having a maximum cooking medium capacity of 80 pounds (36.3 kg) each: one additional Class K portable fire extinguisher of a minimum 1.5-gallon (6 L) capacity shall be provided.
3. For individual fryers exceeding 6 square feet (0.55 m^2) in surface area: Class K portable fire extinguishers shall be installed in accordance with the extinguisher manufacturer's recommendations.

904.11.6 Operations and maintenance. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems protecting commercial cooking systems shall be maintained in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5 and this section.*

904.11.6.1 Existing automatic fire-extinguishing systems. Where changes in the cooking media, positioning of cooking equipment or replacement of cooking equipment occur in existing commercial cooking systems, the automatic fire-extinguishing system shall be required to comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 904.11 through 904.11.4.

904.11.6.2 Extinguishing system service. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be serviced at least every six months and after activation of the system. Inspection shall be by qualified individuals, and a certificate of inspection shall be forwarded to the fire code official upon completion.

904.11.6.3 Fusible link and sprinkler head replacement. Fusible links and automatic sprinkler heads shall be replaced at least annually, and other protection devices shall be serviced or replaced in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Exception: Frangible bulbs are not required to be replaced annually.

SECTION 905
STANDPIPE SYSTEMS

905.1 General. Standpipe systems shall be provided in new buildings and structures in accordance with this section. Fire hose threads used in connection with standpipe systems shall be approved and shall be compatible with fire department hose threads. The location of fire department hose connections shall be approved. In buildings used for high-piled combustible storage, fire protection shall be in accordance with Chapter 32.

905.2 Installation standard. Standpipe systems shall be installed in accordance with this section and NFPA 14 *as amended in Chapter 80.*

905.3 Required Installations. Standpipe systems shall be installed where required by Sections 905.3.1 through *905.3.11.1*. Standpipe systems are allowed to be combined with automatic sprinkler systems.

Exception: Standpipe systems are not required in Group R-3 occupancies.

905.3.1 Height. *In other than Group R-3 and R-3.1 occupancies,* Class III standpipe systems shall be installed throughout *at each floor where any of the following occur:*

1. *Buildings* where the floor level of the highest story is located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.
2. *Buildings that are four or more stories in height.*
3. *Buildings* where the floor level of the lowest story is located more than 30 feet (9144mm) below the highest level of fire department vehicle access.
4. *Buildings that are two or more stories below the highest level of fire department vehicle access.*

Exceptions:

1. Class I standpipes are allowed in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
2. Class I manual standpipes are allowed in open parking garages where the highest floor is located not more than 150 feet (45 720 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.
3. Class I manual dry standpipes are allowed in open parking garages that are subject to freezing temperatures, provided that the hose connections are located as required for Class II standpipes in accordance with Section 905.5.
4. Class I standpipes are allowed in basements equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system.
5. In determining the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, it shall not be required to consider:
    5.1. Recessed loading docks for four vehicles or less, and
    5.2. Conditions where topography makes access from the fire department vehicle to the building impractical or impossible.

905.3.2 Group A. Class I automatic wet standpipes shall be provided in nonsprinklered Group A buildings having an occupant load exceeding 1,000 persons.

Exceptions:

1. Open-air-seating spaces without enclosed spaces.
2. Class I automatic dry and semiautomatic dry standpipes or manual wet standpipes are allowed in buildings that are not high-rise buildings.

905.3.3 Covered and open mall buildings. Covered mall and open mall buildings shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system where required by Section 905.3.1. Mall buildings not required to be equipped with a standpipe system by Section 905.3.1 shall be equipped with Class I hose connections connected to the automatic sprinkler system sized to deliver water at 250 gallons per minute (946.4 L/min) at the most hydraulically remote hose connection while concurrently supplying the automatic sprinkler system demand. The standpipe system shall be designed not to exceed a 50 pounds per square inch (psi) (345 kPa) residual pressure loss with a flow of 250 gallons per minute (946.4 L/min) from the fire department connection to the hydraulically most remote hose connection. Hose connections shall be provided at each of the following locations:

1. Within the mall at the entrance to each exit passageway or corridor.
2. At each floor-level landing within enclosed stairways opening directly on the mall.
3. At exterior public entrances to the mall of a covered mall building.
4. At public entrances at the perimeter line of an open mall building.
5. At other locations as necessary so that the distance to reach all portions of a tenant space does not

exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm) from a hose connection.

905.3.4 Stages. Stages greater than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) in area shall be equipped with a Class III wet standpipe system with $1^1/_2$-inch and $2^1/_2$-inch (38 mm and 64 mm) hose connections on each side of the stage.

Exception: Where the building or area is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system, a $1^1/_2$ inch (38 mm) hose connection shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 13 or in accordance with NFPA 14 for Class II or III standpipes.

905.3.4.1 Hose and cabinet. The $1^1/_2$-inch (38 mm) hose connections shall be equipped with sufficient lengths of $1^1/_2$-inch (38 mm) hose to provide fire protection for the stage area. Hose connections shall be equipped with an approved adjustable fog nozzle and be mounted in a cabinet or on a rack.

905.3.5 Underground buildings. Underground buildings shall be equipped throughout with a Class I automatic wet or manual wet standpipe system.

905.3.6 Helistops and heliports. Buildings with a rooftop helistop or heliport shall be equipped with a Class I or III standpipe system extended to the roof level on which the helistop or heliport is located in accordance with Section 2007.5.

905.3.7 Marinas and boatyards. Standpipes in marinas and boatyards shall comply with Chapter 36.

905.3.8 Rooftop gardens and landscaped roofs. Buildings or structures that have rooftop gardens or landscaped roofs and that are equipped with a standpipe system shall have the standpipe system extended to the roof level on which the rooftop garden or landscaped roof is located.

905.3.9 Smokeproof enclosures. *For smokeproof enclosures, see California Building Code, Section 909.20.*

905.3.10 Group I-3. *Housing units within cell complexes where 50 or more inmates are restrained shall be provided with Class I wet standpipes. In addition, Class I wet standpipes shall be located so that it will not be necessary to extend hose lines through interlocking security doors and any doors in smoke-barrier walls, horizontal fire walls or fire barrier walls. Standpipes located in cell complexes may be placed in secured pipe chases.*

905.3.11 Fixed guideway transit systems. *Underground stations shall be provided with a Class III standpipe system designed to comply with the following:*

1. *Automatically supply 65 pounds per square inch (psi) for each outlet.*
2. *Supply a 250 gallons per minute (gpm) (946 L/m) flow to each of the two most remote $2^1/_2$ inch (64 mm) outlets when pressurized through the fire department connection(s).*

905.3.11.1 *All other stations shall be provided with a Class I manual wet standpipe system; a manual dry Class I standpipe system may be allowed in areas subject to freezing.*

Exception: *Open at-grade stations with unrestricted fire department access need not be provided with a standpipe system.*

905.4 Location of Class I standpipe hose connections. Class I standpipe hose connections shall be provided in all of the following locations:

1. In every required stairway, a hose connection shall be provided for each floor level above or below grade. Hose connections shall be located at an intermediate floor level landing between floors, unless otherwise *approved* by the fire code official. *See Section 909.20.3.2 of the California Building Code for additional provisions in smokeproof enclosures.*
2. On each side of the wall adjacent to the exit opening of a horizontal exit.

   Exception: Where floor areas adjacent to a horizontal exit are reachable from exit stairway hose connections by a nozzle attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose, *as measured along the path of travel*, a hose connection shall not be required at the horizontal exit.
3. In every exit passageway, at the entrance from the exit passageway to other areas of a building.

   Exception: Where floor areas adjacent to an exit passageway are reachable from exit stairway hose connections by a 30-foot (9144 mm) hose stream from a nozzle attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose, a hose connection shall not be required at the entrance from the exit passageway to other areas of the building.
4. In covered mall buildings, adjacent to each exterior public entrance to the mall and adjacent to each entrance from an exit passageway or exit corridor to the mall. In open mall buildings, adjacent to each public entrance to the mall at the perimeter line and adjacent to each entrance from an exit passageway or exit corridor to the mall.
5. Where the roof has a slope less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33.3-percent slope), a hose connection shall be located to serve the roof or at the highest landing of a stairway with stair access to the roof provided in accordance with Section 1009.16.
6. Where the most remote portion of a nonsprinklered floor or story is more than 150 feet (45 720 mm) from a hose connection or the most remote portion of a sprinklered floor or story is more than *150 feet (45 720 mm)* from a hose connection, the fire code official is authorized to require that additional hose connections be provided in approved locations. *The distances from a hose connection shall be measured along the path of travel.*

905.4.1 Protection. Risers and laterals of Class I standpipe systems not located within an enclosed stairway or pressurized enclosure shall be protected by a degree of fire resistance equal to that required for vertical enclosures in the building in which they are located.

Exception: In buildings equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system, laterals that are not located within an enclosed stairway or pressurized enclosure are not required to be enclosed within fire-resistance-rated construction.

905.4.2 Interconnection. In buildings where more than one standpipe is provided, the standpipes shall be interconnected in accordance with NFPA 14.

905.5 Location of Class II standpipe hose connections. Class II standpipe hose connections shall be accessible and shall be located so that all portions of the building are within 30 feet (9144 mm) of a *listed variable stream fog* nozzle attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose.

905.5.1 Groups A-1 and A-2. In Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies with occupant loads of more than 1,000, hose connections shall be located on each side of any stage, on each side of the rear of the auditorium, on each side of the balcony, and on each tier of dressing rooms.

905.5.2 Protection. Fire-resistance-rated protection of risers and laterals of Class II standpipe systems is not required.

905.5.3 Class II system 1-inch hose. A minimum 1-inch (25 mm) hose shall be allowed to be used for hose stations in light-hazard occupancies where investigated and listed for this service and where approved by the fire code official.

905.6 Location of Class III standpipe hose connections. Class III standpipe systems shall have hose connections located as required for Class I standpipes in Section 905.4 and shall have Class II hose connections as required in Section 905.5.

905.6.1 Protection. Risers and laterals of Class III standpipe systems shall be protected as required for Class I systems in accordance with Section 905.4.1.

905.6.2 Interconnection. In buildings where more than one Class III standpipe is provided, the standpipes shall be interconnected in accordance with NFPA 14.

905.7 Cabinets. Cabinets containing fire-fighting equipment, such as standpipes, fire hose, fire extinguishers or fire department valves, shall not be blocked from use or obscured from view.

905.7.1 Cabinet equipment identification. Cabinets shall be identified in an approved manner by a permanently attached sign with letters not less than 2 inches (51 mm) high in a color that contrasts with the background color, indicating the equipment contained therein.

Exceptions:

1. Doors not large enough to accommodate a written sign shall be marked with a permanently attached pictogram of the equipment contained therein.
2. Doors that have either an approved visual identification clear glass panel or a complete glass door panel are not required to be marked.

905.7.2 Locking cabinet doors. Cabinets shall be unlocked.

Exceptions:

1. Visual identification panels of glass or other approved transparent frangible material that is easily broken and allows access.
2. Approved locking arrangements.
3. Group I-3 occupancies.

905.8 Dry standpipes. Dry standpipes shall not be installed.

Exception: Where subject to freezing and in accordance with NFPA 14.

905.9 Valve supervision. Valves controlling water supplies shall be supervised in the open position so that a change in the normal position of the valve will generate a supervisory signal at the supervising station required by Section 903.4. Where a fire alarm system is provided, a signal shall also be transmitted to the control unit.

Exceptions:

1. Valves to underground key or hub valves in roadway boxes provided by the municipality or public utility do not require supervision.
2. Valves locked in the normal position and inspected as provided in this code in buildings not equipped with a fire alarm system.

905.10 During construction. Standpipe systems required during construction and demolition operations shall be provided in accordance with Section 3313.

905.11 Existing buildings. Where required in Chapter 11, existing structures shall be equipped with standpipes installed in accordance with Section 905.

SECTION 906
PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

906.1 Where required. Portable fire extinguishers shall be installed in the following locations.

1. In new and existing Group A, B, E, F, H, I, *L,* M, R-1, R-2, *R-2.1, R-3.1,* R-4 and S occupancies.

   Exception: In Group R-2 occupancies, portable fire extinguishers shall be required only in locations specified in Items 2 through 6 where each dwelling unit is provided with a portable fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 1-A:10-B:C.

2. Within 30 feet (9144 mm) of commercial cooking equipment.
3. In areas where flammable or combustible liquids are stored, used or dispensed.
4. On each floor of structures under construction, except Group R-3 occupancies, in accordance with Section 3315.1.

(e) Extinguishers and extinguishing agents for the protection of Class D hazards shall be of types approved for use on the specific combustible metal hazard.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §566(a) through (f)] Application for Specific Hazards.

(a) Class B Fire Extinguishers for Pressurized Flammable Liquids and Pressurized Gas Fires. Fires of this nature are considered to be a special hazard. Class B fire extinguishers containing agents other than dry chemical are relatively ineffective on this type of hazard due to stream and agent characteristics. Selection of extinguishers for this type of hazard shall be made on the basis of recommendations by manufacturers of this specialized equipment. The system used to rate extinguishers on Class B fires (flammable liquids in depth) is not applicable to these types of hazards. It has been determined that special nozzle design and rates of agent application are required to cope with such hazards. Caution: It is undesirable to attempt to extinguish this type of fire unless there is reasonable assurance that the source of fuel can be promptly shut off.

(b) Fire extinguishers provided for the protection of cooking appliances that use combustible cooking media (vegetable or animal oils and fats) shall be listed and labeled Class K fires.

(c) Three-dimensional Class B Fires. A three-dimensional Class B fire involves Class B materials in motion such as pouring, running or dripping flammable liquids and generally includes vertical as well as one or more horizontal surfaces. Fires of this nature are considered to be a special hazard. Selection of extinguishers for this type of hazard shall be made on the basis of recommendations by manufacturers of this specialized equipment. The system used to rate extinguishers on Class B fires (flammable liquids in depth) is not directly applicable to this type of hazard.

(d) Water Soluble Flammable Liquid Fires (Polar Solvents). Extinguishers used for the protection of water soluble flammable liquids, such as alcohols, acetones, esters, ketones, etc., shall be selected in accordance with Section 565.2. AFFF-type and FFFP-type fire extinguishers shall not be used for the protection of water soluble flammable liquids, such as alcohols, acetone, esters, ketones, etc., unless specifically referenced on the extinguisher nameplate.

(e) Electronic Equipment Fires. Extinguishers for the protection of delicate electronic equipment shall be selected from the following: carbon dioxide type or a halogenated agent type, or a distilled water mist type with a minimum Class A:C Rating.

(f) In patient care areas and sleeping rooms of health care facilities, fire extinguishers, including the agents and expelling means, should be selected and utilized that would not be detrimental to patients and are appropriate for the type of fire expected, such as distilled water mist type fire extinguishers with a minimum 2-A:C rating.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §567.8] Installation Temperatures.

Water-type (water, AFFF, FFFP) extinguishers shall not be installed in areas where temperatures are outside the range of 40°F to 120°F (4°C to 49°C). Other types shall not be installed in areas where temperatures are outside the range of -40°F to 120°F (-40°C to 49°C). Fire extinguishers shall not be exposed to temperatures outside of the range shown on the fire extinguisher label.

Exceptions:

1. *Where fire extinguishers are installed in locations subject to temperatures outside these ranges, they shall be of a type approved and listed for the temperature to which they are exposed, or they shall be placed in an enclosure capable of maintaining the stipulated temperature range.*
2. *Fire extinguishers containing plain water only can be protected to temperatures as low as -40°F (-40°C) by the addition of an antifreeze stipulated on the extinguisher nameplate. Calcium chloride solutions shall not be used in stainless steel fire extinguishers.*
3. *Some fire extinguishers are approved or listed for use at temperatures as low as -65°F (-54°C).*

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §574.1] Frequency of Inspection.

Fire extinguishers shall be manually inspected when initially placed in service. Thereafter, extinguishers shall be manually inspected at least monthly by the building owner, occupant, or his/her authorized agent, or electronically monitored. Fire extinguishers shall be inspected at more frequent intervals when circumstances require, as determined by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §574.2] Inspection Procedures.

(a) In addition to California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Section 574.1, fire extinguishers shall be manually inspected in accordance with this section if they are located where any of the following conditions exist:

(1) High frequency of fires in the past.

(2) Extra (high) hazard areas.

(3) Location that makes fire extinguishers susceptible to mechanical or physical damage.

(4) Exposure to abnormal temperatures or corrosive atmospheres.

(b) Manual inspection of extinguishers shall include a check of at least the following items:

(1) Located in designated place.

(2) No obstruction to access or visibility.

(3) Operating instructions on nameplate legible and facing outward.

(4) Safety seals and tamper indicators not broken or missing.

(5) Examine for obvious physical damage, corrosion, leakage or clogged nozzle.

(6) Pressure gauge reading or indicator in the operable range or position.

(7) Fullness determined by weighing or hefting.

(8) For wheeled units, the condition of tires, wheels, carriage, hose, and nozzle shall also be checked.

(9) For nonrechargeable extinguishers using push-to-test pressure indicators, test the indicator.

(c) Electronic monitoring shall include monitoring of the following items:

(1) Located in the designated place.

(2) No obstruction to access or visibility.

(3) Pressure gauge reading or indicator in the operable range or position.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §567.1] Operating Conditions.

Portable extinguishers shall be maintained in a fully charged and operable condition, and kept in their designated places at all times when they are not being used.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §574.3] Corrective Action.

When an inspection of any extinguisher reveals a deficiency in any of the conditions listed in Title 19, Division 1, Sections 574.2(b)(c), immediate corrective action shall be taken.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §574.4] Nonrechargeable Extinguishers.

When an inspection of any nonrechargeable fire extinguisher reveals a deficiency in any of the conditions listed in (3), (4), (5), (6), (7) or (9) of Title 19, Division 1, Section 574.2(b), it shall be discharged and removed from service.

***Exception:** Nonrechargeable extinguishers containing a halon agent shall be removed from service, not discharged, and returned to the manufacturer or local fire extinguisher distributor having the capability of recovering the halon agent.*

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §575.10] Out of Service.

Fire extinguishers removed from service for maintenance or recharge shall be replaced by fire extinguishers suitable for the type of hazard protected and shall be of at least equal rating.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §591.5] Replacement Extinguishers.

Portable fire extinguishers shall not be removed from the premises for hydrostatic testing or any other purpose, without first replacing the extinguisher with a unit rated for the hazard being protected. The customer's original unit shall be returned within 60 calendar days.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §596.7(a) and (b)] Removal of Tag.

(a) No person shall remove any tag, collar or label required by Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3, Article 9 from a portable fire extinguisher except when service is performed.

(b) No person shall deface, modify, or alter any tag collar or label required by California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3, Article 9 to be attached to any portable fire extinguisher.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §574.5(a) through (c)] Inspection Record Keeping.

(a) The fire extinguisher owner shall maintain records of all fire extinguishers inspected, including those extinguishers that were found to require corrective actions. Records shall be maintained until next required maintenance.

(b) At least monthly, the date the manual inspection was performed and the initials of the person performing the inspection shall be recorded on a tag or label attached to the fire extinguisher, or an inspection checklist maintained on file, or an electronic system (e.g., bar coding) that provides a permanent record.

(c) Fire extinguishers being inspected via electronic monitoring, whereby the extinguisher causes a signal at a control unit when a deficiency in any of the conditions listed in California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Section 574.2(c) occurs, shall provide record keeping in the form of an electronic event log at the control panel.

906.2.1 Certification of service personnel for portable fire extinguishers. Service personnel providing or conducting maintenance on portable fire extinguishers shall possess a valid certificate *in accordance with California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3.*

906.3 Size and distribution. The size and distribution of portable fire extinguishers shall be in accordance with Sections 906.3.1 through 906.3.4.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §567(a) through (k)] Distribution of Fire Extinguishers.

(a) The minimum number of fire extinguishers needed to protect a property shall be determined as outlined in this section. Additional extinguishers may be installed to provide more suitable protection.

(b) Fire extinguishers shall be provided for the protection of both the building structure and the occupancy hazards contained therein.

(c) Required building protection shall be provided by fire extinguishers suitable for Class A fires.

(d) Occupancy hazard protection shall be provided by fire extinguishers suitable for such Class A, B, C, D or K fire potentials as may be present.

(e) Extinguishers provided for building protection may be considered also for the protection of occupancies having a Class A fire potential.

(f) Buildings having an occupancy hazard subject to Class B and/or Class C fires shall have a standard complement of Class A fire extinguishers for building protection, plus additional Class B and/or Class C extinguishers. Where

TABLE 906.3(2)
FLAMMABLE OR COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS WITH DEPTHS OF LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO 0.25-INCH[a]

TYPE OF HAZARD	BASIC MINIMUM EXTINGUISHER RATING	MAXIMUM TRAVEL DISTANCE TO EXTINGUISHERS (feet)
Light (Low)	5-B 10-B	30 50
Ordinary (Moderate)	10-B 20-B	30 50
Extra (High)	40-B 80-B	30 50

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. For requirements on water-soluble flammable liquids and alternative sizing criteria, see *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3.*

906.3.3 Class C fire hazards. Portable fire extinguishers for Class C fire hazards shall be selected and placed on the basis of the anticipated Class A or B hazard.

906.3.4 Class D fire hazards. Portable fire extinguishers for occupancies involving combustible metals shall be selected and placed in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3.*

906.4 Cooking grease fires. Fire extinguishers provided for the protection of cooking grease fires shall be of an approved type compatible with the automatic fire-extinguishing system agent and in accordance with Section 904.11.5.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §573(a) through (c)] Fire Extinguisher Size and Placement for Commercial Cooking Operations.

(a) Fire extinguishers with a Class K rating shall be provided for hazards where there is a potential for fires involving combustible cooking media (vegetable or animal oils and fats).

(b) Maximum travel distance shall not exceed 30 feet (9.15 m) from the hazard to the extinguishers.

(c) Additional fire extinguishers, required for the control of other classes of fires, shall be provided for commercial cooking areas as required by California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Section 567.

906.5 Conspicuous location. Portable fire extinguishers shall be located in conspicuous locations where they will be readily accessible and immediately available for use. These locations shall be along normal paths of travel, unless the fire code official determines that the hazard posed indicates the need for placement away from normal paths of travel.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §567.5] Physical Damage Protection.

Extinguishers installed under conditions where they are subject to physical damage, (e.g., from impact, vibration, the environment) shall be adequately protected.

906.6 Unobstructed and unobscured. Portable fire extinguishers shall not be obstructed or obscured from view. In rooms or areas in which visual obstruction cannot be completely avoided, means shall be provided to indicate the locations of extinguishers.

906.7 Hangers and brackets. Hand-held portable fire extinguishers, not housed in cabinets, shall be installed on the hangers or brackets supplied. Hangers or brackets shall be securely anchored to the mounting surface in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §567.3] Installation.

Portable fire extinguishers other than wheeled types shall be securely installed on the hanger or in the bracket supplied or placed in cabinets or wall recesses. The hanger or bracket shall be securely and properly anchored to the mounting surface in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.Wheeled-type fire extinguishers shall be located in a designated location.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §567.4] Brackets.

Extinguishers installed under conditions where they are subject to dislodgement shall be installed in brackets specifically designed to cope with this problem.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §567.6] Mounting.

Fire extinguishers having a gross weight not exceeding 40 pounds (18.14 kg) shall be installed so that the top of the fire extinguisher is not more than 5 feet (1.53 m) above the floor. Fire extinguishers having a gross weight greater than 40 pounds (18.14 kg) (except wheeled types) shall be so installed that the top of the fire extinguisher is not more than $3^1/_2$ *feet (1.07 m) above the floor. In no case shall the clearance between the bottom of the extinguisher and the floor be less than 4 inches (10.2 cm).*

906.8 Cabinets. Cabinets used to house portable fire extinguishers shall not be locked.

Exceptions:

1. Where portable fire extinguishers subject to malicious use or damage are provided with a means of ready access.
2. In Group I-3 occupancies and in mental health areas in Group I-2 occupancies, access to portable fire extinguishers shall be permitted to be locked or to be located in staff locations provided the staff has keys.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §567.2] Cabinets.

Cabinets housing extinguishers shall not be locked.

Exception: *Where extinguishers are subject to malicious use, locked cabinets may be used provided they include a means of emergency access and are approved by the authority having jurisdiction.*

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §567.7] Sealed Cabinets.

Where extinguishers are installed in closed cabinets that are exposed to elevated temperatures, the cabinets shall be provided with screened openings and drains.

906.9 Extinguisher installation. The installation of portable fire extinguishers shall be in accordance with Sections 906.9.1 through 906.9.3.

906.9.1 Extinguishers weighing 40 pounds or less. Portable fire extinguishers having a gross weight not exceeding 40 pounds (18 kg) shall be installed so that their tops are not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the floor.

906.9.2 Extinguishers weighing more than 40 pounds. Hand-held portable fire extinguishers having a gross weight exceeding 40 pounds (18 kg) shall be installed so that their tops are not more than 3.5 feet (1067 mm) above the floor.

906.9.3 Floor clearance. The clearance between the floor and the bottom of installed hand-held portable fire extinguishers shall not be less than 4 inches (102 mm).

906.10 Wheeled units. Wheeled fire extinguishers shall be conspicuously located in a designated location.

SECTION 907
FIRE ALARM AND DETECTION SYSTEMS

907.1 General. This section covers the application, installation, performance and maintenance of fire alarm systems and their components in new and existing buildings and structures. The requirements of Section 907.2 are applicable to new buildings and structures. The requirements of Section 907.9 are applicable to existing buildings and structures.

907.1.1 Construction documents. Construction documents for fire alarm systems shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code, the *California Building Code*, and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the fire code official.

907.1.2 Fire alarm shop drawings. Shop drawings for fire alarm systems shall be submitted for review and approval prior to system installation, and shall include, but not be limited to, all of the following:

1. A floor plan that indicates the use of all rooms.
2. Locations of alarm-initiating devices.
3. Locations of alarm notification appliances, including candela ratings for visible alarm notification appliances.
4. Location of fire alarm control unit, transponders and notification power supplies.
5. Annunciators.
6. Power connection.
7. Battery calculations.
8. Conductor type and sizes.
9. Voltage drop calculations.
10. Manufacturers' data sheets indicating model numbers and listing information for equipment, devices and materials.
11. Details of ceiling height and construction.
12. The interface of fire safety control functions.
13. Classification of the supervising station.
14. *All plans and shop drawings shall use the symbols identified in NFPA 170, Standard for Fire Safety and Emergency Symbols.*

Exception: *Other symbols are allowed where approved by the enforcing agency.*

907.1.3 Equipment. Systems and components shall be *California State Fire Marshal* listed and approved *in accordance with California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1* for the purpose for which they are installed.

907.1.4 Fire-walls and fire barrier walls. *For the purpose of Section 907, fire walls and fire barrier walls shall not define separate buildings.*

907.1.5 Fire alarm use. *A fire alarm system shall not be used for any purpose other than fire warning or mass notification and where permitted by NFPA 72.*

907.2 Where required—new buildings and structures. An approved fire alarm system installed in accordance with the provisions of this code and NFPA 72 shall be provided in new buildings and structures in accordance with Sections 907.2.1 through 907.2.23 and provide occupant notification in accordance with Section 907.5, unless other requirements are provided by another section of this code.

A minimum of one manual fire alarm box shall be provided in an approved location to initiate a fire alarm signal for fire alarm systems employing automatic fire detectors or water-flow detection devices. Where other sections of this code allow elimination of fire alarm boxes due to sprinklers or automatic fire alarm systems, a single fire alarm box shall be installed *at a location approved by the enforcing agency*.

Exceptions:

1. The manual fire alarm box is not required for fire alarm control units dedicated to elevator recall control, supervisory service *and fire sprinkler monitoring.*
2. The manual fire alarm box is not required for Group R-2 occupancies unless required by the fire code official to provide a means for fire watch personnel to initiate an alarm during a sprinkler system impairment event. Where provided, the manual fire alarm box shall not be located in an area that is accessible to the public.
3. *The manual fire alarm box is not required to be installed when approved by the fire code official.*

907.2.1 Group A. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group A occupancies where the occupant load due to the assembly occupancy is 300 or more. Group A occupancies not separated from one another in accordance with Section 707.3.9 of the *California Building Code* shall be considered as a single occupancy for the purposes of applying this section. Portions of Group E occupancies occupied for assembly purposes *with an occupant load of less than 1000* shall be provided with a fire alarm system as required for the Group E occupancy.

Exception: Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

Every Group A building used for educational purposes shall be provided with a manual or automatic fire alarm system. This provision shall apply to, but shall not necessarily be limited to, every community college and university.

Exception: *Privately owned trade or vocational schools or any firm or company which provides educational facilities and instructions for its employees.*

907.2.1.1 System initiation in Group A occupancies with an occupant load of 1,000 or more. Activation of the fire alarm in Group A occupancies with an *occupant load* of 1,000 or more shall initiate a signal using an emergency voice/alarm communications system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2. *For Group A occupancies with an occupant load of 10,000 or more, see Section 907.2.1.3.*

Exception: Where approved, the prerecorded announcement is allowed to be manually deactivated for a period of time, not to exceed 3 minutes, for the sole purpose of allowing a live voice announcement from an approved, constantly attended location.

907.2.1.2 Emergency voice/alarm communication system captions. Stadiums, arenas and grandstands required to caption audible public announcements shall be in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.4.

907.2.1.3 Public address system. *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13108.9, for all buildings or structures constructed on or after July 1, 1991, which are intended for public assemblies of 10,000 or more persons, a public address system with an emergency backup power system shall be required.*

907.2.2 Group B. A manual fire alarm system shall be installed in Group B occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The combined Group B occupant load of all floors is 500 or more.
2. The Group B occupant load is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest level of exit discharge.
3. The fire area contains an ambulatory care facility.
4. *For Group B occupancies containing educational facilities, see Section 907.2.2.2.*

Exception: Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

907.2.2.1 Ambulatory care facilities. Fire areas containing ambulatory care facilities shall be provided with an electronically supervised automatic smoke detection system installed within the ambulatory care facility and in public use areas outside of tenant spaces, including public corridors and elevator lobbies.

Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 provided the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

907.2.2.2 Group B Educational facilities. *Every Group B building used for educational purposes shall be provided with a manual or automatic fire alarm system. This provision shall apply to, but shall not necessarily be limited to, every community college and university.*

Exception: *Privately owned trade or vocational schools or any firm or company which provides educational facilities and instructions for its employees.*

907.2.3 Group E. A manual *and automatic* fire alarm system that initiates the occupant notification signal utilizing an emergency voice/alarm communication system meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall be installed in Group E occupancies *with an occupant load of 50 or more persons or containing more than one classroom or one or more rooms used for Group E or I-4 day care purposes in accordance with this section.* When automatic sprinkler systems or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or detectors shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.

Exceptions:

1. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required in Group E occupancies where all of the following apply:
    - *1.1.* Interior corridors are protected by smoke detectors.
    - *1.2.* Auditoriums, cafeterias, gymnasiums and similar areas are protected by heat detectors or other approved detection devices.
    - *1.3.* Shops and laboratories involving dusts or vapors are protected by heat detectors or other approved detection devices.
    - *1.4. The capability to activate the evacuation signal from a central point is provided.*
2. Manual fire alarm boxes shall not be required in Group E occupancies where the building is equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the emergency voice/alarm communication system will activate on sprinkler

water flow and manual activation is provided from a normally occupied location.

3. *For public school state-funded construction projects, see Section 907.2.29.*

907.2.3.1 System connection. *Where more than one fire alarm control unit is used at the school campus, they shall be interconnected and shall operate all notification appliances.*

Exception: *Interconnection of fire alarm control units is not required when all of the following are provided:*

1. *Buildings that are separated a minimum of 20 feet (6096 mm) and in accordance with the California Building Code; and*
2. *There is a method of two-way communication between each classroom and the school administrative office approved by the fire enforcing agency; and*
3. *A method of manual activation of each fire alarm system is provided.*

907.2.3.2 Assemblies located within a Group E occupancy. *Assembly occupancies with an occupant load of less than 1,000 and located within a Group E occupancy campus or building shall be provided with a fire alarm system as required for the Group E occupancy.*

907.2.3.3 Notification. *The fire alarm system notification shall comply with the requirements of Section 907.5.*

907.2.3.4 Annunciation. *Annunciation of the fire alarm system shall comply with the requirements of Section 907.6.3.1.*

907.2.3.5 Monitoring. *School fire alarm systems shall be monitored in accordance with Section 907.6.5.3.*

907.2.3.6 Automatic fire alarm system. *Automatic detection shall be provided in accordance with this section.*

907.2.3.6.1 Smoke detectors. *Smoke detectors shall be installed at the ceiling of every room and in "ceiling-plenums" utilized for environmental air. Where the ceiling is attached directly to the underside of the roof structure, smoke detectors shall be installed on the ceiling only.*

Exception: *Where the environment or ambient conditions exceed smoke detector installation guidelines, heat detectors or fire sprinklers shall be used.*

907.2.3.6.2 Heat detectors. *Heat detectors shall be installed in combustible spaces where sprinklers or smoke detectors are not installed.*

907.2.3.7 Private schools. *An automatic fire alarm system shall be provided in new buildings of private schools.*

Exception: *Automatic detection devices are not required where an approved automatic sprinkler system is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate on sprinkler water flow and manual activation is provided from a normally occupied location.*

907.2.3.8 Day care, Group E.

907.2.3.8.1 An automatic fire alarm system shall be provided in all buildings used as or containing a Group E day care.

Exception: *Automatic detection devices are not required where an approved automatic sprinkler system is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate on sprinkler water flow and manual activation is provided from a normally occupied location.*

907.2.3.8.2 Smoke detectors shall be installed in every room used for sleeping or napping.

907.2.4 Group F. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group F occupancies where both of the following conditions exist:

1. The Group F occupancy is two or more stories in height; and
2. The Group F occupancy has a combined occupant load of 500 or more above or below the lowest level of exit discharge.

Exception: Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

907.2.5 Group H. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group H-5 occupancies and in occupancies used for the manufacture of organic coatings. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed for highly toxic gases, organic peroxides and oxidizers in accordance with Chapters 60, 62 and 63, respectively.

907.2.5.1 Group H occupancies located above the 10th story. *Manual fire alarm boxes shall be required on each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier and at each exit above the 10th story.*

907.2.6 Group I. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group I occupancies. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.2.6.1, 907.2.6.2 and 907.2.6.3.3.

Exceptions:

1. *Large family day care.*
2. Occupant notification systems are not required to be activated where private mode signaling installed in accordance with NFPA 72 is approved by the fire code official.

907.2.6.1 Group I-1. *Reserved.*

907.2.6.2 Group I-2 ***and Group I-2.1.*** *A manual and automatic fire alarm system shall be installed in Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies. Where automatic fire suppression systems or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or detectors shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.*

Exception: *Where an entire facility is used for the housing of persons, none of whom are physically or mentally handicapped or nonambulatory, and are between the ages of 18 and 64, the buildings or structures comprising such facility shall be exempt from the provisions of this subsection relating to the installation of an automatic fire alarm system.*

907.2.6.2.1 Notification. *The fire alarm notification system shall be in accordance with Section 907.5.2.5.*

907.2.6.2.2 Automatic fire detection. *Smoke detectors shall be provided in accordance with this section.*

1. *In patient and client sleeping rooms. Actuation of such detectors shall cause a visual display on the corridor side of the room in which the detector is located and shall cause an audible and visual alarm at the respective nurses' station. A nurse call system listed for this function is an acceptable means of providing the audible and visual alarm at the respective nurses' station and corridor room display. Operation of the smoke detector shall not include any alarm verification feature.*

   Exception: *In patient and client rooms equipped with existing automatic door closers having integral smoke detector, the integral detector is allowed to substitute for the room smoke detector, provided it meets all the required alerting functions.*

2. *Group I-2 nurses' stations. A minimum of one (1) smoke detector shall be installed at the nurses' station and centrally located.*
3. *In waiting areas and corridors onto which they open, in the same smoke compartment, in accordance with Section 407.2.1 of the California Building Code.*

907.2.6.3 Group I-3 occupancies. Group I-3 occupancies shall be equipped with a manual fire alarm system and automatic smoke detection system installed for alerting staff.

Exception: *An automatic smoke detection system is not required within temporary holding cells.*

907.2.6.3.1 System initiation. Actuation of an automatic fire-extinguishing system, automatic sprinkler system, a manual fire alarm box or a fire detector shall initiate an approved fire alarm signal which automatically notifies staff.

907.2.6.3.2 Manual fire alarm boxes. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required to be located in accordance with Section 907.4.2 where the fire alarm boxes are provided at staff-attended locations having direct supervision over areas where manual fire alarm boxes have been omitted.

907.2.6.3.2.1 Manual fire alarms boxes in detainee areas. Manual fire alarm boxes are allowed to be locked in areas occupied by detainees, provided that staff members are present within the subject area and have keys readily available to operate the manual fire alarm boxes.

907.2.6.3.3 Automatic smoke detection system. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed throughout resident housing areas, including sleeping units and contiguous day rooms, group activity spaces and other common spaces normally accessible to *inmates.*

Exceptions:

1. Other approved smoke detection *arrangements may be used to prevent damage or tampering or for other purposes provided the function of detecting any fire is fulfilled and the location of the detectors is such that the speed of detection will be equivalent to that provided by the spacing and location required in accordance with NFPA 72 as referenced in Chapter 80. This may include the location of detectors in return air ducts from cells, behind grilles or in other locations. Spot type, combination duct and open area smoke detectors may be used when located not more than 14 inches (356 mm) from the return air grill. For initiation and annunciation purposes, these detectors may be combined in groups of four. The fire code official having jurisdiction, however, must approve the proposed equivalent performance of the design.*
2. *For detention housing and/or mental health housing area(s), including correctional medical and mental health uses, automatic smoke detection system in sleeping units*

shall not be required when all of the following conditions are met:

2.1. All rooms, including the inmate cells, are provided with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2.2. Building is continuously staffed by a correctional officer at all times.

2.3. The exception to Section 903.2.6.2 shall not apply.

3. Smoke detectors are not required to be installed in inmate cells with two or fewer occupants in detention facilities which do not have a correctional medical and mental health use.

4. Smoke detectors are not required to be installed in inmate day rooms of detention facilities where 24-hour direct visual supervision is provided by a correctional officer(s) and a manual fire alarm box is located in the control room.

***907.2.6.3.4 System annunciation** A staff alerting fire alarm shall sound at all staff control stations on the floor of activation and an audible and visual signal shall be indicated on an annunciator at the facility control center upon activation of any automatic extinguishing system, automatic detection system, or any smoke detector or manual actuating or initiating device. In addition, where there are staff-control stations on the floor, an audible, visual and manual alarm shall be located in each staff control station.*

Fire and trouble signals of fire alarm systems and sprinkler water-flow and supervisory signals of extinguishing systems shall be annunciated in an area designated as the facility control center which shall be constantly attended by staff personnel. All such signals shall produce both an audible signal and visual display at the facility control center indicating the building, floor zone or other designated area from which the signal originated, in accordance with Section 907.6.3.

All local detention facilities within the scope of Section 6031.4 of the Penal Code shall have an automatic smoke detection system. A manual fire alarm-initiating device shall be installed in all guard control stations and shall be capable of alerting personnel in a central control point to the presence of fire or smoke within the facility.

***907.2.6.4 Large family day care.** Every large family day-care home shall be provided with at least one manual device at a location approved by the enforcing agency. Such device shall actuate a fire alarm signal, which shall be audible throughout the facility at a minimum level of 15 db above ambient noise level. These devices need not be interconnected to any other fire alarm device, have a control panel or be electrically supervised or provided with emergency power. Such device or devices shall be attached to the structure and may be of any type acceptable to the enforcing agency, provided that such devices are distinctive in tone and are audible throughout the structure.*

907.2.7 Group M. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group M occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The combined Group M *occupant load* of all floors is 500 or more *persons.*
2. The Group M occupant load is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest level of exit discharge.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in covered or open mall buildings complying with Section 402 of the *California Building Code.*
2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will automatically activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

907.2.7.1 Occupant notification. During times that the building is occupied, the initiation of a signal from a manual fire alarm box or from a water flow switch shall not be required to activate the alarm notification appliances when an alarm signal is activated at a constantly attended location from which evacuation instructions shall be initiated over an emergency voice/alarm communication system installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

907.2.8 Group R-1. Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-1 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.8.1 through 907.2.8.3.

907.2.8.1 Manual fire alarm system. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-1 occupancies.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two stories in height where all individual sleeping units and contiguous attic and crawl spaces to those units are separated from each other and public or common areas by at least 1-hour fire partitions and each individual sleeping unit has an exit directly to a public way, egress court or yard.

2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required throughout the building when the following conditions are met:
    2.1. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2;
    2.2. The notification appliances will activate upon sprinkler water flow; and
    2.3. At least one manual fire alarm box is installed at an approved location.

907.2.8.2 Automatic smoke detection system. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed throughout all interior corridors serving sleeping units.

Exception: An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving sleeping units and where each sleeping unit has a means of egress door opening directly to an exit or to an exterior exit access that leads directly to an exit.

907.2.8.3 Smoke alarms. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

907.2.9 Group R-2 *and R-2.1*. Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Groups R-2 *and R-2.1* occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.9.1 and *907.2.9.4*.

907.2.9.1 Manual fire alarm system. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-2 occupancies where:

1. Any dwelling unit or sleeping unit is located three or more stories above the lowest level of exit discharge;
2. Any dwelling unit or sleeping unit is located more than one story below the highest level of exit discharge of exits serving the dwelling unit or sleeping unit; or
3. The building contains more than 16 dwelling units or sleeping units.
4. *Congregate residences with more than 16 occupants.*

Exceptions:

1. A fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two stories in height where all dwelling units or sleeping units and contiguous attic and crawl spaces are separated from each other and public or common areas by at least 1-hour fire partitions and each dwelling unit or sleeping unit has an exit directly to a public way, egress court or yard.
2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and the occupant notification appliances will automatically activate throughout the notification zones upon a sprinkler water flow.
3. A fire alarm system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving dwelling units and are protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, provided that dwelling units either have a means of egress door opening directly to an exterior exit access that leads directly to the exits or are served by open-ended corridors designed in accordance with Section 1026.6, Exception 4.

907.2.9.2 Smoke alarms. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

907.2.9.3 Group R-2 college and university buildings. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-2 college and university buildings in the following locations:

1. Common spaces outside of dwelling units and sleeping units.
2. Laundry rooms, mechanical equipment rooms, and storage rooms.
3. All interior corridors serving sleeping units or dwelling units.

Required smoke alarms in dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 college and university buildings shall be interconnected with the fire alarm system in accordance with NFPA 72.

Exception: An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving sleeping units or dwelling units and where each sleeping unit or dwelling unit either has a means of egress door opening directly to an exterior exit access that leads directly to an exit or a means of egress door opening directly to an exit.

907.2.9.4 Licensed Group R-2.1 occupancies. *Licensed Group R-2.1 occupancies housing more than six nonambulatory, elderly clients shall be provided with an approved manual and automatic fire alarm system.*

Exceptions: *Buildings housing nonambulatory clients on the first story only and which are protected throughout by the following:*

1. *An approved and supervised automatic sprinkler system, as specified in Sections 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, which upon activation will initiate the fire alarm system to notify all occupants.*
2. *A manual fire alarm system.*
3. *Smoke alarms required by Section 907.2.11.*

907.2.9.4.1 Smoke alarms. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

907.2.10 Group R-4. Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-4 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.10.1 through 907.2.10.3.

907.2.10.1 Manual fire alarm system. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-4 occupancies.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two stories in height where all individual sleeping units and contiguous attic and crawl spaces to those units are separated from each other and public or common areas by at least 1-hour fire partitions and each individual sleeping unit has an exit directly to a public way, egress court or yard.
2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required throughout the building when the following conditions are met:
    - 2.1. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2;
    - 2.2. The notification appliances will activate upon sprinkler water flow; and
    - 2.3. At least one manual fire alarm box is installed at an approved location.
3. Manual fire alarm boxes in resident or patient sleeping areas shall not be required at exits where located at all nurses' control stations or other constantly attended staff locations, provided such stations are visible and continuously accessible and that travel distances required in Section 907.4.2.1 are not exceeded.

907.2.10.2 Automatic smoke detection system. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in corridors, waiting areas open to corridors and habitable spaces other than sleeping units and kitchens.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke detection in habitable spaces is not required where the facility is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving sleeping units and where each sleeping unit has a means of egress door opening directly to an exit or to an exterior exit access that leads directly to an exit.

907.2.10.3 Smoke alarms. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

907.2.11 Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms. Listed single- and multiple-station smoke alarms complying with UL 217 shall be installed in accordance with Sections 907.2.11.1 through 907.2.11.4 and NFPA 72.

Exception: *For Group R occupancies. A fire alarm system with smoke detectors located in accordance with this section may be installed in lieu of smoke alarms. Upon actuation of the detector, only those notification appliances in the dwelling unit or guest room where the detector is actuated shall activate.*

907.2.11.1 Group R-1. Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in all of the following locations in Group R-1:

1. In sleeping areas.
2. In every room in the path of the means of egress from the sleeping area to the door leading from the sleeping unit.
3. In each story within the sleeping unit, including basements. For sleeping units with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full story below the upper level.

See Section 907.2.11.4 for specific location requirements.

907.2.11.2 Groups R-2, R-2.1, R-3, R-3.1 and R-4. Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed and maintained in Groups R-2, R-2.1, R-3, R-3.1 and R-4 regardless of occupant load at all of the following locations:

1. On the ceiling or wall outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of bedrooms.
2. In each room used for sleeping purposes.

    Exception: Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms in Group *R-2.1* shall not be required where smoke detectors are provided in the sleeping rooms as part of an automatic smoke detection system.

3. In each story within a dwelling unit, including basements but not including crawl spaces and uninhabitable attics. In dwellings or dwelling units with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full story below the upper level.

4. *In a Group R-3.1 occupancies, in addition to the above, smoke alarms shall be provided throughout the habitable areas of the dwelling unit except kitchens.*

See Section *907.2.11.4* for specific location requirements.

907.2.11.2.1 Group I-4 occupancies. *Large family day-care homes shall be equipped with State Fire Marshal approved and listed single station residential type smoke alarms.*

907.2.11.2.2 Group R-3.1 *In all facilities housing a bedridden client, smoke alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring when such wiring is served from a commercial source and shall be equipped with a battery backup. Smoke alarms shall be electrically interconnected so as to cause all smoke alarms to sound a distinctive alarm signal upon actuation of any single smoke alarm. Such alarm signal shall be audible throughout the facility at a minimal level of 15 db above ambient noise level. These devices need not be interconnected to any other fire alarm device, have a control panel, or be electronically supervised or provided with emergency power.*

907.2.11.2.3 Smoke alarms. *Smoke alarms shall be tested and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Smoke alarms that no longer function shall be replaced.*

907.2.11.3 Interconnection. Where more than one smoke alarm is required to be installed within an individual dwelling unit or sleeping unit in Group R occupancies, the smoke alarms shall be interconnected in such a manner that the activation of one alarm will activate all of the alarms in the individual unit. Physical interconnection of smoke alarms shall not be required where listed wireless alarms are installed and all alarms sound upon activation of one alarm. The alarm shall be clearly audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed.

907.2.11.4 Power source. In new construction *and in newly classified Group R-3.1 occupancies,* required smoke alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source and shall be equipped with a battery backup. Smoke alarms with integral strobes that are not equipped with battery back-up shall be connected to an emergency electrical system. Smoke alarms shall emit a signal when the batteries are low. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than as required for overcurrent protection.

Exception: Smoke alarms are not required to be equipped with battery backup where they are connected to an emergency electrical system.

907.2.11.5 Specific location requirements.

Extract from NFPA 72 Section 29.8.3.4 Specific Location Requirements.*

This extract has been provided by NFPA as amended by the Office of the State Fire Marshal and adopted by reference as follows:

29.8.3.4 Specific Location Requirements. The installation of smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be located where ambient conditions, including humidity and temperature, are outside the limits specified by the manufacturer's published instructions.

(2) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be located within unfinished attics or garages or in other spaces where temperatures can fall below 40ºF (4ºC) or exceed 100ºF (38ºC).

(3) Where the mounting surface could become considerably warmer or cooler than the room, such as a poorly insulated ceiling below an unfinished attic or an exterior wall, smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be mounted on an inside wall.

(4) Smoke alarms or smoke detectors shall be installed a minimum of 20 feet horizontal distance from a permanently installed cooking appliance.

Exceptions:

1. *Ionization smoke alarms with an alarm-silencing switch or Photoelectric smoke alarms shall be permitted to be installed 10 feet (3 m) or greater from a permanently installed cooking appliance.*
2. *Photoelectric smoke alarms shall be permitted to be installed greater than 6 feet (1.8 m) from a permanently installed cooking appliance where the kitchen or cooking area and adjacent spaces have no clear interior partitions and the 10-foot distances would prohibit the placement of a smoke alarm or smoke detector required by other sections of the code.*
3. *Smoke alarms listed for use in close proximity to a permanently installed cooking appliance.*

(5) Installation near bathrooms. Smoke alarms shall be installed not less than a 3-foot (0.91 m) horizontal distance from the door or opening of a bathroom that contains a bathtub or shower unless this would prevent placement of a smoke alarm required by other sections of the code.

(6) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36 in. (910 mm) horizontal path from the supply registers of a forced air heating or cooling system and shall be installed outside of the direct airflow from those registers.

(7) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36 in. (910 mm) horizontal path from the tip of the blade of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan.

(8) Where stairs lead to other occupied levels, a smoke alarm or smoke detector shall be located so that smoke rising in the stairway cannot be prevented from reach-

ing the smoke alarm or smoke detector by an intervening door or obstruction.

(9) For stairways leading up from a basement, smoke alarms or smoke detectors shall be located on the basement ceiling near the entry to the stairs.

(10) For tray-shaped ceilings (coffered ceilings), smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be installed on the highest portion of the ceiling or on the sloped portion of the ceiling within 12 in. (300 mm) vertically down from the highest point.

(11) Smoke alarms and detectors installed in rooms with joists or beams shall comply with the requirements of 17.7.3.2.4.

(12) Heat alarms and detectors installed in rooms with joists or beams shall comply with the requirements of 17.6.3.

**For additional requirements or clarification, see NFPA 72.*

907.2.11.6 Existing Group R Occupancies. *See the California Residential Code for existing Group R-3 occupancies or Chapter 11 of the California Fire Code for all other existing Group R occupancies.*

907.2.12 Special amusement buildings. An automatic smoke detection system shall be provided in special amusement buildings in accordance with Sections 907.2.12.1 through 907.2.12.3.

907.2.12.1 Alarm. Activation of any single smoke detector, the automatic sprinkler system or any other automatic fire detection device shall immediately activate an audible and visible alarm at the building at a constantly attended location from which emergency action can be initiated, including the capability of manual initiation of requirements in Section 907.2.12.2.

907.2.12.2 System response. The activation of two or more smoke detectors, a single smoke detector equipped with an alarm verification feature, the automatic sprinkler system or other approved fire detection device shall automatically:

1. Cause illumination of the means of egress with light of not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) at the walking surface level;
2. Stop any conflicting or confusing sounds and visual distractions;
3. Activate an approved directional exit marking that will become apparent in an emergency; and
4. Activate a prerecorded message, audible throughout the special amusement building, instructing patrons to proceed to the nearest exit. Alarm signals used in conjunction with the prerecorded message shall produce a sound which is distinctive from other sounds used during normal operation.

907.2.12.3 Emergency voice/alarm communication system. An emergency voice/alarm communication system, which is also allowed to serve as a public address system, shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2 and be audible throughout the entire special amusement building.

907.2.13 High-rise buildings *and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.* High-*rise buildings and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access* shall be provided with an automatic smoke detection system in accordance with Section 907.2.13.1, a fire department communication system in accordance with Section 907.2.13.2 and an emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

Exceptions:

1. Airport traffic control towers in accordance with Section 907.2.22 and Section 412 of the *California Building Code*.
2. Open parking garages in accordance with Section 406.5 of the *California Building Code*.
3. Buildings with an occupancy in Group A-5 in accordance with Section 303.1 of the *California Building Code*.
4. Low-hazard special occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1 of the *California Building Code.*
5. In Group I-2*, I-2.1 and R-2.1* occupancies, the alarm shall sound at a constantly attended location and occupant notification shall be broadcast by the emergency voice/alarm communication system.

907.2.13.1 Automatic smoke detection. Automatic smoke detection in high-rise buildings *and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access* shall be in accordance with Sections 907.2.13.1.1 and 907.2.13.1.2.

907.2.13.1.1 Area smoke detection. Area smoke detectors shall be provided in accordance with this section. Smoke detectors shall be connected to an automatic fire alarm system. The activation of any detector required by this section shall activate the emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2. In addition to smoke detectors required by Sections 907.2.1 through 907.2.10, smoke detectors shall be located as follows:

1. In each mechanical equipment, electrical, transformer, telephone equipment or similar room which is not provided with sprinkler protection.
2. In each elevator machine room and in elevator lobbies.

[M] 907.2.13.1.2 Duct smoke detection. *Smoke detectors listed for use in air duct systems shall be provided in accordance with this section and the California Mechanical Code. The activation of any detector required by this section shall initiate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly* *attended location.* Duct smoke detectors complying with Section 907.3.1 shall be located as follows:

1. In the main return air and exhaust air plenum of each air-conditioning system having a capacity greater than 2,000 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.94 m^3/s). Such detectors shall be located in a serviceable area downstream of the last duct inlet.
2. At each connection to a vertical duct or riser serving two or more stories from a return air duct or plenum of an air-conditioning system. In Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies, a smoke detector is allowed to be used in each return air riser carrying not more than 5,000 cfm (2.4 m^3/s) and serving not more than 10 air-inlet openings.

907.2.13.2 Fire department communication system. Where a wired communication system is approved in lieu of an emergency responder radio coverage system in accordance with Section 510, the wired fire department communication system shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and shall operate between a fire command center complying with Section 508, elevators, elevator lobbies, emergency and standby power rooms, fire pump rooms, areas of refuge and inside enclosed exit stairways. The fire department communication device shall be provided at each floor level within the enclosed exit stairway.

907.2.14 Atriums connecting more than two stories. A fire alarm system shall be installed in occupancies with an atrium that connects more than two stories, with smoke detection installed throughout the atrium. The system shall be activated in accordance with Section 907.5. Such occupancies in Group A, E or M shall be provided with an emergency voice/alarm communication system complying with the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2.

907.2.15 High-piled combustible storage areas. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed throughout high-piled combustible storage areas where required by Section 3206.5.

907.2.16 Aerosol storage uses. Aerosol storage rooms and general-purpose warehouses containing aerosols shall be provided with an approved manual fire alarm system where required by this code.

907.2.17 Lumber, wood structural panel and veneer mills. Lumber, wood structural panel and veneer mills shall be provided with a manual fire alarm system.

907.2.18 Underground buildings with smoke control systems. Where a smoke control system is installed in an underground building in accordance with the *California Building Code*, automatic smoke detectors shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.18.1.

907.2.18.1 Smoke detectors. A minimum of one smoke detector listed for the intended purpose shall be installed in the following areas:

1. Mechanical equipment, electrical, transformer, telephone equipment, elevator machine or similar rooms.
2. Elevator lobbies.
3. The main return and exhaust air plenum of each air-conditioning system serving more than one story and located in a serviceable area downstream of the last duct inlet.
4. Each connection to a vertical duct or riser serving two or more floors from return air ducts or plenums of heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems, except that in Group R occupancies, a listed smoke detector is allowed to be used in each return air riser carrying not more than 5,000 cfm (2.4 m^3/s) and serving not more than 10 air inlet openings.

907.2.18.2 Alarm required. Activation of the smoke control system shall activate an audible alarm at a constantly attended location.

907.2.19 Deep underground buildings. Where the lowest level of a structure is more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest level of exit discharge, the structure shall be equipped throughout with a manual fire alarm system, including an emergency voice/alarm communication system installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

907.2.20 Covered and open mall buildings. Where the total floor area exceeds 50,000 square feet (4645 m^2) within either a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, an emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be provided. Emergency voice/alarm communication systems serving a mall, required or otherwise, shall be accessible to the fire department. The system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

907.2.21 Residential aircraft hangars. A minimum of one single-station smoke alarm shall be installed within a residential aircraft hangar as defined in the *California Building Code* and shall be interconnected into the residential smoke alarm or other sounding device to provide an alarm that will be audible in all sleeping areas of the dwelling.

907.2.22 Airport traffic control towers. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be provided in airport control towers in all occupiable and equipment spaces.

Exception: Audible appliances shall not be installed within the control tower cab.

907.2.23 Battery rooms. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed in areas containing stationary storage battery systems with a liquid capacity of more than 50 gallons (189 L).

907.2.24 Motion Picture and Television Production Studio Sound Stages and Approved Production Facilities

907.2.24.1 Sound Stages—Solid-ceiling Sets and Platforms. *Where required by Chapter 48, all interior solid-ceiling sets over 600 square feet (55.7 m^2) in area, and platforms (when provided) over 600 square feet (55.7 m^2) in area and which exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in height* *shall be protected by an approved heat detector system. Heat detectors shall be spaced 30 feet (9144 mm) on center or as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions. The fire alarm system shall be connected to an approved supervising station in accordance with Section 907.6.5 or a local alarm which will give an audible signal at a constantly attended location.*

907.2.24.2 Production locations—solid-ceiling sets and platforms. *Where required by Chapter 48 of the California Fire Code, buildings with existing fire protection systems and where production intends to construct solid-ceiling sets over 600 square feet (55.7 m^2) in area, and platforms over 600 square feet (55.7 m^2) in area and which exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in height shall be protected by an approved heat detector system. Heat detectors shall be spaced 30 feet (9144 mm) on center or as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions. The fire alarm system shall be connected to an approved supervising station in accordance with Section 907.6.5 or a local alarm which will give an audible signal at a constantly attended location.*

907.2.24.3 Fire alarm control units. *Fire alarm control units shall be California State Fire Marshal listed and shall be utilized in accordance with their listing. Control units are permitted to be temporarily supported by sets, platforms or pedestals.*

907.2.24.4 Heat detectors.

907.2.24.4.1 *Heat detection required by this section shall be defined as a portable system as it is intended to be reinstalled when platforms or sets are changed.*

907.2.24.4.2 *Heat detectors shall be secured to standard outlet boxes and are allowed to be temporarily supported by sets, platforms or pedestals.*

907.2.24.4.3 *Heat detectors shall be provided for solid-ceiling sets and platforms where required by Section 4805.3 and 4811.14.*

907.2.25 Group C occupancies (Organized Camps).

907.2.25.1 General. *Every building and structure used or intended for sleeping purposes shall be provided with an automatic smoke-detection system.*

Exception:

1. *Buildings and structures in existence and in operation prior to January 1, 1985.*
2. *Tents, tent structures and buildings and structures that do not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm) in any lateral dimensions and where such building or structure is not more than one story.*

907.2.25.2 Camp fire alarm. *Every organized camp shall provide and maintain audible appliances or devices suitable for sounding a fire alarm. Such audible appliances or devices may be of any type acceptable to the enforcing agency, provided they are distinctive in tone from all other signaling devices or systems and shall be audible throughout the camp premises. When an automatic fire alarm system is provided, as required by Section 440.6.6 of the California Building Code, all audible appliances required by this section shall be of the same type as that used in the automatic system.*

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §3.12] Fire Alarm.

Every organized camp shall provide and maintain an audible appliance or audible appliances suitable for sounding a fire alarm. Such audible appliance or audible appliances may be of any type acceptable to the enforcing agency provided they are distinctive in tone from all other signaling devices or systems and shall be audible throughout the camp premises.

When an automatic fire alarm system is provided, all audible appliances and fire alarm signals as required by this section shall be of the same type as that used in the automatic system.

907.2.26 Fixed Guideway Transits Systems Fire Alarm and Communication Systems.

907.2.26.1 General. *Every fixed guideway transit station shall be provided with an approved emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with NFPA 72. The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be designed and installed so that damage to any one speaker will not render any paging zone of the system inoperative.*

Exception: *Open stations.*

907.2.26.2 System components. *Each station fire alarm system shall consist of:*

1. *Fire alarm control unit at a location as permitted by the enforcing agency.*
2. *An alarm annunciator(s). The annunciator(s) shall be located at a point acceptable to the enforcing agency. The annunciator(s) shall indicate the type of device and general location of alarm. All alarm, supervisory and trouble signals shall be transmitted to the local annunciator(s) and the operations control center.*
3. *Manual fire alarm boxes shall be provided throughout passenger platforms and stations.*

   Exception: *Two-way emergency communication reporting devices (emergency telephones) are allowed to be used in lieu of manual fire alarm boxes, as permitted by the enforcing agency. Such devices shall provide two-way communication between the operations control center and each device. Such devices shall be located as required for manual fire alarm boxes, and shall be distinctly identified by signs, coloring, or other means acceptable to the enforcing agency.*
4. *Automatic smoke detectors in all ancillary spaces.*

   Exceptions:

   1. *Ancillary spaces protected by an approved fixed automatic extinguishing system; or*
   2. *Ancillary spaces protected by quick-response sprinklers.*
5. *Automatic control of exiting components.*

__907.2.26.3 Emergency voice/alarm communication system.__ Each station shall be provided with a an emergency voice/alarm communication system capable of transmitting voice, recorded or electronically generated textual messages to all areas of the station. The system(s) shall be configured such that the messages can be initiated from either the Emergency Management Panel (EMP) or the operations control center.

__907.2.26.4 Emergency telephones.__ A dedicated two-way emergency communication phone system designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 shall be provided in all underground stations to facilitate direct communications for emergency response between remote locations and the EMP.

__907.2.26.4.1__ Remote emergency phones shall be located at ends of station platforms, each hose outlet connection and station valve rooms.

__907.2.26.4.2__ Provisions shall be made in the design of this two-way emergency communication phone system for extensions of the system to the next passenger station or guideway portal.

__907.2.27 Winery caves.__ An approved manual fire alarm system conforming to the provisions of Section 907.2.1 shall be provided in all Type 3 winery caves.

__907.2.28 Group L.__ A manual fire alarm system shall be installed throughout buildings containing Group L occupancy. When Group L occupancies are located in mixed use buildings, at least one manual fire alarm shall be located in the Group L occupancy.

__907.2.28.1 Group L occupancies located above the 10th story.__ Manual fire alarm boxes shall be required on each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier and at each exit above the 10th story.

907.2.29 Public school state-funded construction projects for kindergarten through 12th grade — automatic fire alarm system requirements.

__907.2.29.1 New public school campus.__ All occupancies shall be provided with an automatic fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system signal utilizing an emergency voice/alarm communication system meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6. The provisions of this section shall apply to any public school project consisting of one or more buildings on a new school campus and receiving state funds pursuant to Leroy F. Greene School Facilities Act of 1998, California Education Code, Sections 17070.10 through 17079. For purposes of this section, new campus refers to a school site, where an application for construction of original buildings was made to the Division of the State Architect (DSA) on or after July 1, 2002.

Exceptions:

1. *A relocatable building that is sited with the intent that it be at the site for less than three years and is sited upon a temporary foundation in a manner that is designed to permit easy removal. Also see CCR, Title 24, Part 1, California Administrative Code, Section 4-314 for definition of relocatable building.*
2. *Detached buildings designed and used for noninstructional purposes that meet the applicable requirements for that occupancy. Buildings would include, but not be limited to:*

Concession stand.
Press box.
Restroom facilities.
Shade structure.
Snack bar.
Storage building.
Ticket booth.

__907.2.29.2 New building on an existing public school campus.__ An automatic fire alarm system shall be provided in all occupancies. The provisions of this section shall apply to any public school project construction of a new building on an existing campus and receiving state funds pursuant to Leroy F. Green, School Facilities Act of 1998, California Education Code sections 17070.10 through 17079. For purposes of this section, an existing campus refers to a school site, where an application for construction of original buildings was made to DSA prior to July 1, 2002.

Exceptions:

1. *A construction project that has an estimated total cost of less than $200,000.*
2. *A relocatable building that is sited with the intent that it be at the site for less than three years and is sited upon a temporary foundation in a manner that is designed to permit easy removal. See California Administrative Code, Section 4-314 for definition of relocatable building.*
3. *Detached buildings designed and used for noninstructional purposes that meet the applicable requirements for that occupancy. Buildings would include, but not be limited to:*

Concession stand.
Press box.
Restroom facilities.
Shade structure.
Snack bar.
Storage building.
Ticket booth.

__907.2.29.3 Alterations to existing buildings on an existing public school campus.__ An automatic fire alarm system shall be provided for all portions within the scope of an alteration project. The provisions of this section shall apply to any public school project on an existing campus and receiving state funds pursuant to Leroy F. Green, School Facilities Act of 1998, California Education Code, Sections 17070.10 through 17079. For purposes of this section, an existing campus refers to a school site, where an application for con-

struction of original buildings was made to DSA prior to July 1, 2002.

Exceptions:

1. *A construction project that has an estimated total cost of less than $200,000.*
2. *A relocatable building that is sited with the intent that it be at the site for less than three years and is sited upon a temporary foundation in a manner that is designed to permit easy removal. See California Administrative Code, Section 4-314 for definition of relocatable building.*
3. *Detached buildings designed and used for noninstructional purposes that meet the applicable requirements for that occupancy. Buildings would include, but not be limited to:*

   Concession stand.
   Press box.
   Restroom facilities.
   Shade structure.
   Snack bar.
   Storage building.
   Ticket booth.

907.2.29.4 Day care, Group E or Group I-4 located on a public school campus. *An automatic fire alarm system shall be provided in all buildings used as or containing a Group E or Group I-4 day care.*

907.3 Fire safety functions. Automatic fire detectors utilized for the purpose of performing fire safety functions shall be connected to the building's fire alarm control unit where a fire alarm system installed. Detectors shall, upon actuation, perform the intended function and activate the alarm notification appliances or activate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly attended location. In buildings not equipped with a fire alarm system, the automatic fire detector shall be powered by normal electrical service and, upon actuation, perform the intended function. The detectors shall be located in accordance with NFPA 72.

907.3.1 Duct smoke detectors. Smoke detectors installed in ducts shall be listed for the air velocity, temperature and humidity present in the duct. Duct smoke detectors shall be connected to the building's fire alarm control unit when a fire alarm system is required by Section 907.2. Activation of a duct smoke detector shall initiate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly attended location and shall perform the intended fire safety function in accordance with this code and the *California Mechanical Code.* Duct smoke detectors shall not be used as a substitute for required open area detection.

Exceptions:

1. The supervisory signal at a constantly attended location is not required where duct smoke detectors activate the building's alarm notification appliances.
2. In occupancies not required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, actuation of a smoke detector shall activate a visible and an audible signal in an approved location. Smoke detector trouble conditions shall activate a visible or audible signal in an approved location and shall be identified as air duct detector trouble.

907.3.2 Delayed egress locks. Where delayed egress locks *or devices* are installed on means of egress doors in accordance with Section 1008.1.9.7, an automatic smoke detection system shall be installed as required by this section *and Section 1008.1.9.7.*

907.3.2.1 *In other than Group I, Group R-2.1 and Group R-4, occupancies for single-story building smoke detectors shall be installed at ceilings throughout all occupied areas and mechanical/electrical spaces. For multiple-story buildings, smoke detectors shall be installed throughout all occupied areas and mechanical/electrical spaces for the story where delayed egress devices are installed. Additional detectors are required on adjacent stories where occupants of those stories utilize the same means of egress.*

Exception: *Refer to Section 907.3.2.4 for Group A courthouse occupancies.*

907.3.2.2 For Group I and R-2.1 occupancies. *Smoke detectors shall be installed at ceilings throughout all occupied areas and mechanical/electrical spaces of smoke-compartments where delayed egress devices are installed. Additional detectors are required in adjacent smoke-compartments where occupants of those compartments utilize the same means of egress.*

907.3.2.3 For Group R-4 occupancies. *In occupancies licensed as residential care facilities for the elderly and housing clients with Alzheimer's disease or dementia, smoke detectors shall be installed at ceilings throughout all occupiable rooms and areas and mechanical/electrical rooms and spaces.*

907.3.2.4 For Group A Courthouse occupancies. *Approved automatic smoke detection systems shall be installed at ceilings in all occupied corridors and mechanical/electrical spaces of smoke compartments where delayed egress devices are installed.*

907.3.3 Elevator emergency operation. Automatic fire detectors installed for elevator emergency operation shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of *California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders* and NFPA 72.

907.3.4 Wiring. The wiring to the auxiliary devices and equipment used to accomplish the above fire safety functions shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with NFPA 72.

907.4 Initiating devices. Where manual or automatic alarm initiation is required as part of a fire alarm system, the initiating devices shall be installed in accordance with Sections 907.4.1 through 907.4.3.1.

907.4.1 Protection of fire alarm control unit. In areas that are not continuously occupied, a single smoke detector shall be provided at the location of each fire alarm control unit, notification appliance circuit power extenders and supervising station transmitting equipment.

Exception: Where ambient conditions prohibit installation of smoke detector, a *heat detector* shall be permitted.

907.4.2 Manual fire alarm boxes. Where a manual fire alarm system is required by another section of this code, it shall be activated by fire alarm boxes installed in accordance with Sections 907.4.2.1 through 907.4.2.6.

907.4.2.1 Location. Manual fire alarm boxes shall be located not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the entrance to each *exit.* Additional manual fire alarm boxes shall be located so that travel distance to the nearest box does not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm).

Exception: *When individual dwelling units are served by a single exit stairway, additional boxes at other than the ground floor may be omitted.*

907.4.2.2 Height. The height of the manual fire alarm boxes shall be a minimum of 42 inches (1067 mm) and a maximum of 48 inches (1372 mm) measured vertically, from the floor level to the activating handle or lever of the box. *Manual fire alarm boxes shall also comply with Section 11B309.4 of the California Building Code.*

Exception: [DSA-AC] *In existing buildings there is no requirement to retroactively relocate existing manual fire alarm boxes to a minimum of 42 inches (1067 mm) and a maximum of 48 inches (1219 mm) from the floor level to the activating handle or lever of the box.*

907.4.2.3 Color. Manual fire alarm boxes shall be red in color.

907.4.2.4 Signs. Where fire alarm systems are not monitored by a supervising station, an approved permanent sign shall be installed adjacent to each manual fire alarm box that reads: WHEN ALARM SOUNDS—CALL FIRE DEPARTMENT.

Exception: Where the manufacturer has permanently provided this information on the manual fire alarm box.

907.4.2.5 Protective covers. The fire code official is authorized to require the installation of listed manual fire alarm box protective covers to prevent malicious false alarms or to provide the manual fire alarm box with protection from physical damage. The protective cover shall be transparent or red in color with a transparent face to permit visibility of the manual fire alarm box. Each cover shall include proper operating instructions. A protective cover that emits a local alarm signal shall not be installed unless approved. Protective covers shall not project more than that permitted by Section 1003.3.3.

907.4.2.6 Unobstructed and unobscured. Manual fire alarm boxes shall be accessible, unobstructed, unobscured and visible at all times.

907.4.2.7 Operation. *Manual fire alarm boxes shall be operable with one hand including boxes with protective covers.*

907.4.3 Automatic smoke detection. Where an automatic smoke detection system is required it shall utilize smoke detectors unless ambient conditions prohibit such an installation. In spaces where smoke detectors cannot be utilized due to ambient conditions, approved automatic heat detectors shall be permitted.

907.4.3.1 Automatic sprinkler system. For conditions other than specific fire safety functions noted in Section 907.3, in areas where ambient conditions prohibit the installation of smoke detectors, an automatic sprinkler system installed in such areas in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and that is connected to the fire alarm system shall be approved as automatic heat detection.

907.5 Occupant notification systems. A fire alarm system shall annunciate at the fire alarm control unit and shall initiate occupant notification upon activation, in accordance with Sections 907.5.1 through 907.5.2.3.4. Where a fire alarm system is required by another section of this code, it shall be activated by:

1. Automatic fire detectors.
2. Automatic sprinkler system waterflow devices.
3. Manual fire alarm boxes.
4. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems.

Exception: Where notification systems are allowed elsewhere in Section 907 to annunciate at a constantly attended location.

907.5.1 Presignal feature. A presignal feature shall not be installed unless approved by the fire code official and the fire department. Where a presignal feature is provided, a signal shall be annunciated at a constantly attended location approved by the fire department, in order that occupant notification can be activated in the event of fire or other emergency.

907.5.2 Alarm notification appliances. Alarm notification appliances shall be provided and shall be listed for their purpose.

907.5.2.1 Audible alarms. Audible alarm notification appliances shall be provided and emit a distinctive sound that is not to be used for any purpose other than that of a fire alarm. *In Group I-2 occupancies, audible appliances located in patient areas shall be only chimes or similar sounding appliances for alerting staff. See Section 907.6.5.*

Exceptions:

1. Visible alarm notification appliances shall be allowed in lieu of audible alarm notification appliances in *patient* areas of Group I-2 occupancies.
2. Where provided, audible notification appliances located in each occupant evacuation elevator lobby in accordance with Section 3008.10.1 of the *California Building Code*

shall be connected to a separate notification zone for manual paging only.

907.5.2.1.1 Average sound pressure. The audible alarm notification appliances shall provide a sound pressure level of 15 decibels (dBA) above the average ambient sound level or 5 dBA above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds, whichever is greater, in every occupiable space within the building.

907.5.2.1.2 Maximum sound pressure. The maximum sound pressure level for audible alarm notification appliances shall be 110 dBA at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance. Where the average ambient noise is greater than 95 dBA, visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 72 and audible alarm notification appliances shall not be required.

907.5.2.1.3 Audible alarm signal. *The audible signal shall be the standard fire alarm evacuation signal, ANSI S3.41 Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal, "three pulse temporal pattern," as described in NFPA 72.*

Exception: *The use of the existing evacuation signaling scheme shall be permitted where approved by the enforcing agency.*

907.5.2.2 Emergency voice/alarm communication systems. Emergency voice/alarm communication systems required by this code shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72. The operation of any automatic fire detector, sprinkler waterflow device or manual fire alarm box shall automatically sound an alert tone followed by voice instructions giving approved information and directions for a general or staged evacuation in accordance with the building's fire safety and evacuation plans required by Section 404. In high-rise buildings *and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, t*he system shall operate on a minimum of the alarming floor, the floor above and the floor below. Speakers shall be provided throughout the building by paging zones. At a minimum, paging zones shall be provided as follows:

1. Elevator groups.
2. Exit stairways.
3. Each floor.
4. Areas of refuge as defined in Chapter 2.

Exception: In Group I-2, *I-2.1 and R-2.1* occupancies, the alarm shall sound in a constantly attended area and a general occupant notification shall be broadcast over the overhead page.

907.5.2.2.1 Manual override. A manual override for emergency voice communication shall be provided on a selective and all-call basis for all paging zones.

907.5.2.2.2 Live voice messages. The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall also have the capability to broadcast live voice messages by paging zones on a selective and all-call basis.

907.5.2.2.3 Alternate uses. The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be allowed to be used for other announcements, provided the manual fire alarm use takes precedence over any other use.

907.5.2.2.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication captions. Where stadiums, arenas and grandstands are required to caption audible public announcements in accordance with *Chapter 11B* of the *California Building Code*, the emergency/voice alarm communication system shall also be captioned. Prerecorded or live emergency captions shall be from an approved location constantly attended by personnel trained to respond to an emergency.

907.5.2.2.5 Emergency power. Emergency voice/alarm communications systems shall be provided with an approved emergency power source.

907.5.2.3 Visible alarms. Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.5.2.3.1 through *907.5.2.3.5.*

Exceptions:

1. *In other than Group I-2 and I-2.1, v*isible alarm notification appliances are not required in alterations, except where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.
2. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in *enclosed exit stairways, exterior exit stairs and exterior exit ramps.*
3. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in elevator cars.

907.5.2.3.1 Public and common areas. Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in public *use* areas and common *use* areas *including but not limited to*:

1. *Sanitary facilities including restrooms, bathrooms and shower rooms.*
2. *Corridors.*
3. *Music practice rooms.*
4. *Band rooms.*
5. *Gymnasiums.*
6. *Multipurpose rooms.*
7. *Occupational shops.*
8. *Occupied rooms where ambient noise impairs hearing of the fire alarm.*
9. *Lobbies.*
10. *Meeting rooms.*
11. *Classrooms.*

907.5.2.3.2 Employee work areas. Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the notification appliance circuits serving the employee work areas shall be initially designed with a minimum of 20-percent spare capacity to account for the potential of adding visible notification appliances in the future to accommodate hearing impaired employee(s).

907.5.2.3.3 Groups R-1 ***and R-2.1.*** Group R-1 *and R-2.1* dwelling units or sleeping units in accordance with Table 907.5.2.3.3 shall be provided with a visible alarm notification appliance, activated by both the in-room smoke alarm and the building fire alarm system.

TABLE 907.5.2.3.3
VISIBLE ALARMS

NUMBER OF SLEEPING UNITS	SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS WITH VISIBLE ALARMS
6 to 25	2
26 to 50	4
51 to 75	7
76 to 100	9
101 to 150	12
151 to 200	14
201 to 300	17
301 to 400	20
401 to 500	22
501 to 1,000	5% of total
1,001 and over	50 plus 3 for each 100 over 1,000

[SFM] Also see Chapter 11B of the California Building Code.

907.5.2.3.4 Group R-2. In Group R-2 occupancies required by Section 907 to have a fire alarm system, all dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided with the capability to support visible alarm notification appliances in accordance with *NFPA 72*. Such capability shall be permitted to include the potential for future interconnection of the building fire alarm system with the unit smoke alarms, replacement of audible appliances with combination audible/visible appliances, or future extension of the existing wiring from the unit smoke alarm locations to required locations for visible appliances.

907.5.2.3.5 Group R-2.1, R-3.1 and R-4. *Protective social care facilities which house persons who are hearing impaired, shall be provided with notification appliances for the hearing impaired installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and which shall activate upon initiation of the fire alarm system or the smoke alarms.*

907.5.2.4 Group E schools. *One audible alarm notification appliance shall be mounted on the exterior of a building to alert occupants at each playground area.*

907.5.2.5 Groups I-2 and I-2.1. *Audible appliances shall be used in nonpatient areas. Visible appliances are allowed to be used in lieu of audible appliances in patient occupied areas. Audible appliances located in patient areas shall be only chimes or similar sounding appliances for alerting staff.*

In occupancies housing nonambulatory persons where restraint is practiced, staff and attendants shall be provided and housed or located in such a manner that such supervisory personnel will also be alerted upon activation of the fire alarm system or any detector required by this section.

907.6 Installation. A fire alarm system shall be installed in accordance with Sections 907.6.1 through 907.6.5.3 and NFPA 72.

907.6.1 Wiring. Wiring shall comply with the requirements of *California Electrical Code* and NFPA 72. Wireless protection systems utilizing radio-frequency transmitting devices shall comply with the special requirements for supervision of low-power wireless systems in NFPA 72.

907.6.1.1 High-rise buildings. *Wiring for fire alarm signaling line circuits, initiating circuits and notification circuits in high-rise buildings shall be in accordance with the following:*

1. *Class A in accordance with NFPA 72.*

   Exception: *Initiating circuits which serve only a single initiating device.*

2. *Enclosed in continuous metallic raceways in accordance with the California Electrical Code.*

   Exception: *Metallic cable (MC) shall be permitted for fire alarm notification circuits where continuous metallic raceways are not required for survivability.*

907.6.2 Power supply. The primary and secondary power supply for the fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 72.

Exception: Backup power for single-station and multiple-station smoke alarms as required in Section 907.2.11.4.

907.6.3 Zones. *Fire alarm systems shall be divided into zones where required by this section. For the purposes of annunciation and notification, zoning shall be in accordance with the following:*

1. *Where the fire-protective signaling system serves more than one building, each building shall be considered as a separate zone.*
2. *Each floor of a building shall be considered as a separate zone.*
3. *Each section of floor of a building that is separated by fire walls or by horizontal exits shall be considered as a separate zone.*
4. Each zone shall not exceed 22,500 square feet (2090 m^2). The length of any zone shall not exceed 300 feet (91 440 mm) in any direction.

   Exception: *Automatic sprinkler system zones shall not exceed the area permitted by NFPA 13.*

5. *For Group I-3 occupancies each cell complex shall be considered a separate zone.*
6. *For Group H and L occupancies above the 10th story, each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier shall be considered a separate zone.*

7. *Annunciation shall be further divided into zones where deemed necessary by the enforcing agency.*

907.6.3.1 Annunciation. *Alarm, supervisory and trouble signals shall be annunciated in the main control unit by means of an audible signal and a visual display in accordance with NFPA 72. Identification of the type of alarm and supervisory initiating devices, such as manual, automatic, sprinkler waterflow, sprinkler valve supervisory, fire-pump supervisory, etc., shall be separately indicated.*

Exception: *Group R-3 occupancies.*

907.6.3.1.1 Annunciator panel. An *annunciator panel complying with Section 907.6.3.1* and the associated controls shall be provided in an *approved remote location where deemed necessary by the Enforcing Agency.* The visual zone indication shall lock in until the system is reset and shall not be canceled by the operation of an audible alarm-silencing switch.

907.6.3.2 High-rise buildings. In *high-rise* buildings *and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access,* a separate zone by floor shall be provided for all of the following types of alarm-initiating devices where provided:

1. Smoke detectors.
2. Sprinkler water-flow devices.
3. Manual fire alarm boxes.
4. Other approved types of automatic fire detection devices or suppression systems.

907.6.3.3 High-rise buildings zoning annunciator panel. *In high-rise buildings, a zoning annunciator panel shall be provided in the Fire Command Center. This panel shall not be combined with the Firefighter Smoke Control Panel unless approved. Panel shall be in matrix format or an approved equivalent configuration. All indicators shall be based upon positive confirmation. The panel shall include the following features at a minimum:*

1. *Fire alarm initiating devices with individual annunciation per floor for manual fire alarm boxes, area smoke detectors, elevator lobby smoke detectors, duct smoke detectors, heat detectors, auxiliary alarms and sprinkler waterflow. (Red LED)*
2. *Sprinkler and standpipe system control valves per floor–supervisory. (Yellow LED)*
3. *Common fire alarm system trouble. (Yellow LED)*
4. *Annunciation Panel Power On. (Green LED)*
5. *Lamp test. (Push Button)*

907.6.3.4 Notification zoning. *Upon activation of initiating devices where occupant notification is required for evacuation, all notification zones shall operate simultaneously throughout the building.*

Exceptions:

1. *High-rise buildings as permitted in Section 907.2.13.*
2. *Hospitals and convalescent facilities with staff alerting notification appliances or emergency voice/alarm communication, zoning shall be in accordance with the approved fire plan.*
3. *Detention facilities.*
4. *Upon approval by the fire code official in buildings which are sprinklered throughout, specific notification zoning shall be permitted where the notification zones are separated by a minimum of a 2-hour fire barrier and 2-hour fire-resistive floor assembly. The system shall have the capability to activate all other notification zones by automatic and manual means.*
5. *Upon approval by the fire code official in buildings which are sprinklered throughout, specific notification zoning shall be permitted where the activated initiating device or fire extinguishing system is separated from any nonactive notification zones by a minimum of 300-foot horizontal distance. The system shall have the capability to activate all other notification zones by automatic and manual means.*
6. *Where a Group H or L occupancy is located above the 10th story, each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier shall be considered a separate zone.*

907.6.4 Access. Access shall be provided to each fire alarm device and notification appliance for periodic inspection, maintenance and testing.

907.6.5 Monitoring. Fire alarm systems required by this chapter or by the *California Building Code* shall be monitored by an approved supervising station in accordance with NFPA 72 *and this section.*

Exception: Monitoring by a supervising station is not required for:

1. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms required by Section 907.2.11.
2. Group I-3 occupancies *shall be monitored in accordance with Section 907.2.6.3.*
3. Automatic sprinkler systems in one- and two-family dwellings.

907.6.5.1 Automatic telephone-dialing devices. Automatic telephone-dialing devices used to transmit an emergency alarm shall not be connected to any fire department telephone number unless approved by the fire chief.

909.4.5 Climate. The design shall consider the effects of low temperatures on systems, property and occupants. Air inlets and exhausts shall be located so as to prevent snow or ice blockage.

909.4.6 Duration of operation. All portions of active or passive smoke control systems shall be capable of continued operation after detection of the fire event for a period of not less than either 20 minutes or 1.5 times the calculated egress time, whichever is less.

909.5 Smoke barrier construction. Smoke barriers shall comply with the *California Building Code. S*moke barriers shall be constructed and sealed to limit leakage areas exclusive of protected openings. The maximum allowable leakage area shall be the aggregate area calculated using the following leakage area ratios:

1. Walls: $A/A_w = 0.00100$
2. Interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways: $A/A_w = 0.00035$
3. Enclosed exit access stairways and ramps and all other shafts: $A/A_w = 0.00150$
4. Floors and roofs: $A/A_F = 0.00050$

where:

A = Total leakage area, square feet (m^2).

A_F = Unit floor or roof area of barrier, square feet (m^2).

A_w = Unit wall area of barrier, square feet (m^2).

The leakage area ratios shown do not include openings due to doors, operable windows or similar gaps. These shall be included in calculating the total leakage area.

909.5.1 Leakage area. Total leakage area of the barrier is the product of the smoke barrier gross area multiplied by the allowable leakage area ratio, plus the area of other openings such as gaps and operable windows. Compliance shall be determined by achieving the minimum air pressure difference across the barrier with the system in the smoke control mode for mechanical smoke control systems. Passive smoke control systems tested using other approved means, such as door fan testing, shall be as approved by the fire code official.

909.5.2 Opening protection. Openings in smoke barriers shall be protected by *self-closing devices or* automatic-closing devices actuated by the required controls for the mechanical smoke control system. Door openings shall be protected by fire door assemblies complying with Section 716.5.3 of the *California Building Code.*

Exceptions:

1. Passive smoke control systems with automatic-closing devices actuated by spot-type smoke detectors listed for releasing service installed in accordance with Section 907.3. *When used in a Group I-2 or I-2.1, such detectors shall activate the building fire alarm system and shall close all the smoke barrier doors within the effected zone.*
2. Fixed openings between smoke zones that are protected utilizing the airflow method *in other than Group I-2 or I-2.1.*
3. In Group I-2 *or I-2.1*, where doors are installed across corridors, a pair of opposite-swinging doors without a center mullion *or horizontal sliding doors that comply with Section 1008.1.4.3 shall be installed. Vision panels consisting of fire-rated glazing in approved frames shall be provided in each cross-corridor swinging door and at each cross-corridor horizontal-sliding door in a smoke barrier.* The doors shall be close fitting within operational tolerances, and shall not have undercuts, louvers or grilles. *Swinging* doors shall have head and jamb stops *and* astragals or rabbets at meeting edges. *Doors installed across corridors* shall be automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with *Section 716.5.9.3 of the California Building Code.* Positive-latching devices are required. *Doors installed across corridors shall comply with Section 1008.1.1.*
4. Group I-3.
5. Openings between smoke zones with clear ceiling heights of 14 feet (4267 mm) or greater and bank-down capacity of greater than 20 minutes as determined by the design fire size.
6. *In Group I-2 or I-2.1, smoke damper activation may be accomplished by a fire alarm control unit provided that an open area smoke detection system is provided within all areas served by an HVAC system.*

909.5.2.1 Ducts and air transfer openings. Ducts and air transfer openings are required to be protected with a minimum Class II, 250°F (121°C) smoke damper complying with Section 717 of the *California Building Code*.

909.6 Pressurization method. The primary mechanical means of controlling smoke shall be by pressure differences across smoke barriers. Maintenance of a tenable environment is not required in the smoke-control zone of fire origin.

909.6.1 Minimum pressure difference. The minimum pressure difference across a smoke barrier shall be 0.05-inch water gage (0.0124 kPa) in fully sprinklered buildings.

In buildings allowed to be other than fully sprinklered, the smoke control system shall be designed to achieve pressure differences at least two times the maximum calculated pressure difference produced by the design fire.

909.6.2 Maximum pressure difference. The maximum air pressure difference across a smoke barrier shall be determined by required door-opening or closing forces. The actual force required to open exit doors when the system is in the smoke control mode shall be in accordance with Section 1008.1.3. Opening and closing forces for other doors shall be determined by standard engineering methods for the resolution of forces and reactions. The calculated force to set a side-hinged, swinging door in motion shall be determined by:

$F = F_{dc} + K(WA\Delta P)/2(W - d)$ **(Equation 9-1)**

where:

A = Door area, square feet (m^2).

d = Distance from door handle to latch edge of door, feet (m).

F = Total door opening force, pounds (N).

F_{dc} = Force required to overcome closing device, pounds (N).

K = Coefficient 5.2 (1.0).

W = Door width, feet (m).

ΔP = Design pressure difference, inches of water (Pa).

909.7 Airflow design method. When approved by the fire code official, smoke migration through openings fixed in a permanently open position, which are located between smoke-control zones by the use of the airflow method, shall be permitted. The design airflow shall be in accordance with this section. Airflow shall be directed to limit smoke migration from the fire zone. The geometry of openings shall be considered to prevent flow reversal from turbulent effects.

909.7.1 Velocity. The minimum average velocity through a fixed opening shall not be less than:

$v = 217.2\ [h(T_f - T_o)/(T_f + 460)]^{1/2}$ **(Equation 9-2)**

For SI: $v = 119.9\ [h(T_f - T_o)/T_f]^{1/2}$

where:

h = Height of opening, feet (m).

T_f = Temperature of smoke, °F (K).

T_o = Temperature of ambient air, °F (K).

v = Air velocity, feet per minute (m/minute).

909.7.2 Prohibited conditions. This method shall not be employed where either the quantity of air or the velocity of the airflow will adversely affect other portions of the smoke control system, unduly intensify the fire, disrupt plume dynamics or interfere with exiting. In no case shall airflow toward the fire exceed 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s). Where the formula in Section 909.7.1 requires airflows to exceed this limit, the airflow method shall not be used.

909.8 Exhaust method. When approved by the fire code official, mechanical smoke control for large enclosed volumes, such as in atriums or malls, shall be permitted to utilize the exhaust method. Smoke control systems using the exhaust method shall be designed in accordance with NFPA 92.

909.8.1 Smoke layer. The height of the lowest horizontal surface of the smoke layer interface shall be maintained at least 6 feet (1829 mm) above any walking surface that forms a portion of a required egress system within the smoke zone.

909.9 Design fire. The design fire shall be based on a rational analysis performed by the registered design professional and approved by the fire code official. The design fire shall be based on the analysis in accordance with Section 909.4 and this section.

909.9.1 Factors considered. The engineering analysis shall include the characteristics of the fuel, fuel load, effects included by the fire, and whether the fire is likely to be steady or unsteady.

909.9.2 Design fire fuel. Determination of the design fire shall include consideration of the type of fuel, fuel spacing and configuration.

909.9.3 Heat-release assumptions. The analysis shall make use of best available data from approved sources and shall not be based on excessively stringent limitations of combustible material.

909.9.4 Sprinkler effectiveness assumptions. A documented engineering analysis shall be provided for conditions that assume fire growth is halted at the time of sprinkler activation.

909.10 Equipment. Equipment including, but not limited to, fans, ducts, automatic dampers and balance dampers shall be suitable for their intended use, suitable for the probable exposure temperatures that the rational analysis indicates, and as approved by the fire code official.

909.10.1 Exhaust fans. Components of exhaust fans shall be rated and certified by the manufacturer for the probable temperature rise to which the components will be exposed. This temperature rise shall be computed by:

$T_s = (Q_c/mc) + (T_a)$ **(Equation 9-3)**

where:

c = Specific heat of smoke at smokelayer temperature, Btu/lb°F · (kJ/kg · K).

m = Exhaust rate, pounds per second (kg/s).

Q_c = Convective heat output of fire, Btu/s (kW).

T_a = Ambient temperature, °F (K).

T_s = Smoke temperature, °F (K).

Exception: Reduced T_s as calculated based on the assurance of adequate dilution air.

909.10.2 Ducts. Duct materials and joints shall be capable of withstanding the probable temperatures and pressures to which they are exposed as determined in accordance with Section 909.10.1. Ducts shall be constructed and supported in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code.* Ducts shall be leak tested to 1.5 times the maximum design pressure in accordance with nationally accepted practices. Measured leakage shall not exceed 5 percent of design flow. Results of such testing shall be a part of the documentation procedure. Ducts shall be supported directly from fire-resistance-rated structural elements of the building by substantial, noncombustible supports.

Exception: Flexible connections (for the purpose of vibration isolation) complying with the *California*

Mechanical Code and which are constructed of approved fire-resistance-rated materials.

909.10.3 Equipment, inlets and outlets. Equipment shall be located so as to not expose uninvolved portions of the building to an additional fire hazard. Outside air inlets shall be located so as to minimize the potential for introducing smoke or flame into the building. Exhaust outlets shall be so located as to minimize reintroduction of smoke into the building and to limit exposure of the building or adjacent buildings to an additional fire hazard.

909.10.4 Automatic dampers. Automatic dampers, regardless of the purpose for which they are installed within the smoke control system, shall be listed and conform to the requirements of approved recognized standards.

909.10.5 Fans. In addition to other requirements, belt-driven fans shall have 1.5 times the number of belts required for the design duty with the minimum number of belts being two. Fans shall be selected for stable performance based on normal temperature and, where applicable, elevated temperature. Calculations and manufacturer's fan curves shall be part of the documentation procedures. Fans shall be supported and restrained by noncombustible devices in accordance with the structural design requirements of Chapter 16 of the *California Building Code.*

Motors driving fans shall not be operated beyond their nameplate horsepower (kilowatts) as determined from measurement of actual current draw and shall have a minimum service factor of 1.15.

909.11 Power systems. The smoke control system shall be supplied with two sources of power. Primary power shall be from the normal building power systems. Secondary power shall be from an approved standby source complying with Section 604 and *California Electrical Code*. The standby power source and its transfer switches shall be in a room separate from the normal power transformers and switch gears and ventilated directly to and from the exterior. The room shall be enclosed with not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *California Building Code* or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *California Building Code,* or both. The transfer to full standby power shall be automatic and within 60 seconds of failure of the primary power.

909.11.1 Power sources and power surges. Elements of the smoke control system relying on volatile memories or the like shall be supplied with uninterruptable power sources of sufficient duration to span 15-minute primary power interruption. Elements of the smoke control system susceptible to power surges shall be suitably protected by conditioners, suppressors or other approved means.

909.12 Detection and control systems. Fire detection systems providing control input or output signals to mechanical smoke control systems or elements thereof shall comply with the requirements of Section 907. Such systems shall be equipped with a control unit complying with UL 864 and listed as smoke control equipment.

Control systems for mechanical smoke control systems shall include provisions for verification. Verification shall include positive confirmation of actuation, testing, manual override, the presence of power downstream of all disconnects and, through a preprogrammed weekly test sequence, report abnormal conditions audibly, visually and by printed report.

The status of dampers shall be determined using limit or proximity switches installed at the damper or incorporated into the damper actuator. Where multiple dampers are grouped together in an assembly requiring one or more actuators, each damper shall be independently controlled by a separate actuator and provided with an individual limit or proximity switch, or the dampers shall be linked together by a reliable and durable mechanical means or otherwise by permanent means into one or more groups, with each group provided with a common limit or proximity switch.

The status of fans shall be determined by sensing the air flow downstream of the fans using pressure differential switches or transmitters, or by other means of positive proof of air flow where approved by the enforcing authority.

909.12.1 Wiring. In addition to meeting requirements of *California Electrical Code*, all wiring, regardless of voltage, shall be fully enclosed within continuous raceways.

909.12.2 Activation. Smoke control systems shall be activated in accordance with this section.

909.12.2.1 Pressurization, airflow or exhaust method. Mechanical smoke control systems using the pressurization, airflow or exhaust method shall have completely automatic control.

909.12.2.2 Passive method. Passive smoke control systems actuated by approved spot-type detectors listed for releasing service shall be permitted.

909.12.3 Automatic control. Where completely automatic control is required or used, the automatic-control sequences shall be initiated from an appropriately zoned automatic sprinkler system complying with Section 903.3.1.1, manual controls that are readily accessible to the fire department, and any smoke detectors required by the engineering analysis.

909.13 Control air tubing. Control air tubing shall be of sufficient size to meet the required response times. Tubing shall be flushed clean and dry prior to final connections and shall be adequately supported and protected from damage. Tubing passing through concrete or masonry shall be sleeved and protected from abrasion and electrolytic action.

909.13.1 Materials. Control air tubing shall be hard drawn copper, Type L, ACR in accordance with ASTM B 42, ASTM B 43, ASTM B 68, ASTM B 88, ASTM B 251 and ASTM B 280. Fittings shall be wrought copper or brass, solder type, in accordance with ASME B 16.18 or ASME B 16.22. Changes in direction shall be made with appropriate tool bends. Brass compression-type fittings shall be used at final connection to devices; other joints shall be brazed using a BCuP5 brazing alloy with solidus above 1,100°F (593°C) and liquidus below 1,500°F

(816°C). Brazing flux shall be used on copper-to-brass joints only.

Exception: Nonmetallic tubing used within control panels and at the final connection to devices, provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. Tubing shall comply with the requirements of Section 602.2.1.3 of the *California Mechanical Code*.
2. Tubing and the connected device shall be completely enclosed within a galvanized or paint-grade steel enclosure having a minimum thickness of 0.0296 inch (0.7534 mm) (No.22 gage). Entry to the enclosure shall be by copper tubing with a protective grommet of neoprene or teflon or by suitable brass compression to male-barbed adapter.
3. Tubing shall be identified by appropriately documented coding.
4. Tubing shall be neatly tied and supported within enclosure. Tubing bridging cabinet and door or moveable device shall be of sufficient length to avoid tension and excessive stress. Tubing shall be protected against abrasion. Tubing serving devices on doors shall be fastened along hinges.

909.13.2 Isolation from other functions. Control tubing serving other than smoke control functions shall be isolated by automatic isolation valves or shall be an independent system.

909.13.3 Testing. Control air tubing shall be tested at three times the operating pressure for not less than 30 minutes without any noticeable loss in gauge pressure prior to final connection to devices.

909.14 Marking and identification. The detection and control systems shall be clearly marked at all junctions, accesses and terminations.

909.15 Control diagrams. Identical control diagrams showing all devices in the system and identifying their location and function shall be maintained current and kept on file with the fire code official, the fire department and in the fire command center in a format and manner approved by the fire chief.

909.16 Fire-fighter's smoke control panel. A fire-fighter's smoke control panel for fire department emergency response purposes only shall be provided and shall include manual control or override of automatic control for mechanical smoke control systems. The panel shall be located in a fire command center complying with Section 508 in high-rise buildings, *Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access* or buildings with smoke-protected assembly seating. In all other buildings, the fire-fighter's smoke control panel shall be installed in an approved location adjacent to the fire alarm control panel. The fire-fighter's smoke control panel shall comply with Sections 909.16.1 through 909.16.3.

909.16.1 Smoke control systems. *Fans within the building shall be shown on the fire-fighter's control panel. A clear indication of the direction of air flow and the relationship of components shall be displayed. Status indicators shall be provided for all smoke control equipment, annunciated by fan and zone and by* approved *indicators as follows:*

1. *Fans, dampers and other operating equipment in their normal status—WHITE.*
2. *Fans, dampers and other operating equipment in their off or closed status—RED.*
3. *Fans, dampers and other operating equipment in their on or open status—GREEN.*
4. *Fans, dampers and other operating equipment in a fault status—YELLOW/AMBER.*

909.16.2 Smoke control panel. The fire-fighter's control panel shall provide control capability over the complete smoke-control system equipment within the building as follows:

1. ON-AUTO-OFF control over each individual piece of operating smoke control equipment that can also be controlled from other sources within the building. This includes stairway pressurization fans; smoke exhaust fans; supply, return and exhaust fans; elevator shaft fans; and other operating equipment used or intended for smoke control purposes.
2. OPEN-AUTO-CLOSE control over individual dampers relating to smoke control and that are also controlled from other sources within the building.
3. ON-OFF or OPEN-CLOSE control over smoke control and other critical equipment associated with a fire or smoke emergency and that can only be controlled from the fire-fighter's control panel.

Exceptions:

1. Complex systems, where approved, where the controls and indicators are combined to control and indicate all elements of a single smoke zone as a unit.
2. Complex systems, where approved, where the control is accomplished by computer interface using approved, plain English commands.

909.16.3 Control action and priorities. The fire-fighter's control panel actions shall be as follows:

1. ON-OFF and OPEN-CLOSE control actions shall have the highest priority of any control point within the building. Once issued from the fire-fighter's control panel, no automatic or manual control from any other control point within the building shall contradict the control action. Where automatic means are provided to interrupt normal, nonemergency equipment operation or produce a specific result to safeguard the building or equipment (i.e., duct freezestats, duct smoke detectors, high-temperature cutouts, temperature-actuated linkage and similar devices), such means shall be capable of being overridden by the fire-fighter's control panel. The last

913.4 Valve supervision. Where provided, the fire pump suction, discharge and bypass valves, and the isolation valves on the backflow prevention device or assembly shall be supervised open by one of the following methods.

1. Central-station, proprietary or remote-station signaling service.
2. Local signaling service that will cause the sounding of an audible signal at a constantly attended location.
3. Locking valves open.
4. Sealing of valves and approved weekly recorded inspection where valves are located within fenced enclosures under the control of the owner.

913.4.1 Test outlet valve supervision. Fire pump test outlet valves shall be supervised in the closed position.

913.5 Testing and maintenance. Fire pumps shall be inspected, tested and maintained in accordance with the requirements of this section and *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5.*

913.5.1 Acceptance test. Acceptance testing shall be done in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 20.

913.5.2 Generator sets. Engine generator sets supplying emergency or standby power to fire pump assemblies shall be periodically tested in accordance with NFPA 110.

913.5.3 Transfer switches. Automatic transfer switches shall be periodically tested in accordance with NFPA 110.

913.5.4 Pump room environmental conditions. Tests of pump room environmental conditions, including heating, ventilation and illumination shall be made to ensure proper manual or automatic operation of the associated equipment.

913.6 Fire pumps in high-rise buildings. *Engine-driven fire pumps and electric drive fire pumps supplied by generators shall both be provided with an on-premises fuel supply, sufficient for not less than 8-hour full-demand operation at 100 percent of the rated pump capacity in addition to all other required supply demands in accordance with Sections 9.6 and 11.4.2 of NFPA 20 and this section. (Also see Section 604.2.14.1.1.)*

SECTION 914
FIRE PROTECTION BASED ON SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS OF USE AND OCCUPANCY

914.1 General. This section shall specify where fire protection systems are required based on the detailed requirements of use and occupancy of the *California Building Code*.

914.2 Covered and open mall buildings. Covered and open mall buildings shall comply with Sections 914.2.1 through 914.2.4.

914.2.1 Automatic sprinkler system. Covered and open mall buildings and buildings connected shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, which shall comply with the all of the following:

1. The automatic sprinkler system shall be complete and operative throughout occupied space in the mall building prior to occupancy of any of the tenant spaces. Unoccupied tenant spaces shall be similarly protected unless provided with approved alternative protection.
2. Sprinkler protection for the mall of a covered mall building shall be independent from that provided for tenant spaces or anchor buildings.
3. Sprinkler protection for the tenant spaces of an open mall building shall be independent from that provided for anchor buildings.
4. Sprinkler protection shall be provided beneath exterior circulation balconies located adjacent to an open mall.
5. Where tenant spaces are supplied by the same system, they shall be independently controlled.

Exception: An automatic sprinkler system shall not be required in spaces or areas of open parking garages separated from the covered or open mall in accordance with Section 402.4.2.3 of the *California Building Code* and constructed in accordance with Section 406.5 of the *California Building Code*.

914.2.2 Standpipe system. The covered and open mall building shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system as required by Section 905.3.3.

914.2.3 Emergency voice/alarm communication system. Where the total floor area exceeds 50,000 square feet (4645 m^2) within either a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, an emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be provided. Emergency voice/alarm communication systems serving a mall, required or otherwise, shall be accessible to the fire department. The system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

914.2.4 Fire department access to equipment. Rooms or areas containing controls for air-conditioning systems, automatic fire-extinguishing systems, automatic sprinkler systems or other detection, suppression or control elements shall be identified for use by the fire department.

914.3 High-rise buildings. High-rise buildings *and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access* shall comply with Sections 914.3.1 through 914.3.7.

914.3.1 Automatic sprinkler system. Buildings and structures shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and a secondary water supply where required by Section 903.3.5.2. *A sprinkler water-flow alarm-initiating device and a control valve with a supervisory signal-initiating device shall be provided at the lateral connection to the riser on each floor.*

Exception: An automatic sprinkler system shall not be required in open parking garages in accordance with Section 406.5 of the *California Building Code*.

914.3.1.1 Number of sprinkler *system* risers and system design. Each sprinkler system *serving a floor* in buildings that are more than 420 feet (128 m) in height shall be *connected to* a minimum of two *sprinkler* risers *or combination standpipe system risers located in separate shafts. Each sprinkler system shall be hydraulically designed so that when one connection is shutdown, the other connection shall be capable of supplying the sprinkler system design demand.*

914.3.1.1.1 Riser location. Sprinkler risers shall be placed in interior exit stairways and ramps that are remotely located in accordance with Section 1015.2.

914.3.1.2 Water supply to required fire pumps. Required fire pumps shall be supplied by connections to a minimum of two water mains located in different streets. Separate supply piping shall be provided between each connection to the water main and the pumps. Each connection and the supply piping between the connection and the pumps shall be sized to supply the flow and pressure required for the pumps to operate.

Exception*s*:

1. Two connections to the same main shall be permitted provided the main is valved such that an interruption can be isolated so that the water supply will continue without interruption through at least one of the connections.

2. High-rise buildings not having an occupied floor more than 120 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access where a secondary water supply is provided in accordance with Section 903.3.5.2.

***914.3.1.2.1 Fire pumps.** Redundant fire pump systems shall be required for high-rise buildings having an occupied floor more than 200 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access. Each fire pump system shall be capable of automatically supplying the required demand for the automatic sprinkler and standpipe systems.*

914.3.2 Fire alarm system. A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.13.

914.3.3 Automatic smoke detection. Smoke detection shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.13.1.

914.3.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication system. An emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

914.3.5 Emergency responder radio coverage. Emergency responder radio coverage shall be provided in accordance with Section 510.

914.3.6 Fire command. A fire command center complying with Section 508 shall be provided in a location approved by the fire department.

914.3.7 Smoke control.

***914.3.7.1 Smoke control system.** All portions of high-rise buildings shall be provided with a smoke control system in accordance with California Building Code, Section 909.*

***914.3.7.2 Smokeproof exit enclosures.** Every exit enclosure in high-rise buildings shall comply with California Building Code, Sections 909.20 and 1022.10. Every required stairway in Group I-2 occupancies serving floors more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access shall comply with Sections 909.20 and 1022.10 of the California Building Code.*

***Exception:** In high-rise buildings, exit enclosures serving three or less adjacent floors where one of the adjacent floors is the level of exit discharge.*

914.4 Atriums. Atriums shall comply with Sections 914.4.1 and 914.4.2.

914.4.1 Automatic sprinkler system. An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout the entire building.

Exceptions:

1. That area of a building adjacent to or above the atrium need not be sprinklered, provided that portion of the building is separated from the atrium portion by not less than a 2-hour fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *California Building Code* or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *California Building Code*, or both.
2. Where the ceiling of the atrium is more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above the floor, sprinkler protection at the ceiling of the atrium is not required.

914.4.2 Fire alarm system. A fire alarm system shall be provided where required by Section 907.2.14.

914.5 Underground buildings. Underground buildings shall comply with Sections 914.5.1 through 914.5.5.

914.5.1 Automatic sprinkler system. The highest level of exit discharge serving the underground portions of the building and all levels below shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Water-flow switches and control valves shall be supervised in accordance with Section 903.4.

914.5.2 Smoke control system. A smoke control system is required to control the migration of products of combustion in accordance with Section 909 and provisions of this section. Smoke control shall restrict movement of smoke to the general area of fire origin and maintain means of egress in a usable condition.

914.5.3 Compartment smoke control system. Where compartmentation is required by Section 405.4 of the *California Building Code*, each compartment shall have an independent smoke-control system. The system shall be automatically activated and capable of manual operation in accordance with Section 907.2.18.

914.5.4 Fire alarm system. A fire alarm system shall be provided where required by Sections 907.2.18 and 907.2.19.

914.5.5 Standpipe system. The underground building shall be provided throughout with a standpipe system in accordance with Section 905.

914.6 Stages. Stages shall comply with Sections 914.6.1 and 914.6.2.

914.6.1 Automatic sprinkler system. Stages shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Sprinklers shall be installed under the roof and gridiron and under all catwalks and galleries over the stage. Sprinklers shall be installed in dressing rooms, performer lounges, shops and storerooms accessory to such stages.

Exceptions:

1. Sprinklers are not required under stage areas less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in clear height utilized exclusively for storage of tables and chairs, provided the concealed space is separated from the adjacent spaces by not less than $^{5}/_{8}$-inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum board.
2. Sprinklers are not required for stages 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) or less in area and 50 feet (15 240 mm) or less in height where curtains, scenery or other combustible hangings are not retractable

8. Areas above and below mezzanine floors in accordance with Section 505.2 *of the California Building Code.*
9. *In Group I-2, I-2.1 and I-3 occupancies, the means of egress shall have a ceiling height of not less than 8 feet (2439 mm).*

[B] 1003.3 Protruding objects. Protruding objects shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1003.3.1 through 1003.3.4.

Exception: *In Group I-2 and Group I-2.1 occupancies, protruding objects shall not extend more than 12 inches (305 mm) below the minimum ceiling height required by Section 1003.2.*

[B] 1003.3.1 Headroom. Protruding objects are permitted to extend below the minimum ceiling height required by Section 1003.2 provided a minimum headroom of 80 inches (2032 mm) shall be provided for any walking surface, including walks, corridors, aisles and passageways. Not more than 50 percent of the ceiling area of a means of egress shall be reduced in height by protruding objects.

Exception: Door closers and stops shall not reduce headroom to less than 78 inches (1981 mm).

A barrier shall be provided where the vertical clearance is less than 80 inches (2032 mm) high. The leading edge of such a barrier shall be located 27 inches (686 mm) maximum above the floor.

[B] 1003.3.2 Post-mounted objects. A free-standing object mounted on a post or pylon shall not overhang that post or pylon more than 4 inches (102 mm) where the lowest point of the leading edge is more than 27 inches (686 mm) and less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the walking surface. Where a sign or other obstruction is mounted between posts or pylons and the clear distance between the posts or pylons is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), the lowest edge of such sign or obstruction shall be 27 inches (686 mm) maximum or 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum above the finished floor or ground.

Exception: These requirements shall not apply to sloping portions of handrails between the top and bottom riser of stairs and above the ramp run.

[B] 1003.3.3 Horizontal projections. Structural elements, fixtures or furnishings shall not project horizontally from either side more than 4 inches (102 mm) over any walking surface between the heights of 27 inches (686 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) above the walking surface.

Exception: Handrails are permitted to protrude $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm) from the wall.

1003.3.3.1 Horizontal projections for Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies. *Structural elements, fixtures or furnishings shall not project horizontally from either side more than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) into the required width of an exit access corridor serving any area caring for one or more nonambulatory or bedridden persons.*

Exceptions:

1. *Handrails are permitted to protrude $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) from the wall.*
2. *Alcohol-based hand-rub dispensers are permitted to protrude 4 inches.*
3. *Manual fire alarm boxes with a protective cover installed are permitted to protrude 4 inches.*

[B] 1003.3.4 Clear width. Protruding objects shall not reduce the minimum clear width of accessible routes *as* required *by Chapter 11A or 11B of the California Building Code.*

[B] 1003.4 Floor surface. Walking surfaces of the means of egress shall have a slip-resistant surface and be securely attached.

[B] 1003.5 Elevation change. Where changes in elevation of less than 12 inches (305 mm) exist in the means of egress, sloped surfaces shall be used. Where the slope is greater than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope), ramps complying with Section 1010 shall be used. Where the difference in elevation is 6 inches (152 mm) or less, the ramp shall be equipped with either handrails or floor finish materials that contrast with adjacent floor finish materials.

Exceptions:

1. A single step with a maximum riser height of 7 inches (178 mm) is permitted for buildings with occupancies in Groups F, H, R-2, R-3, S and U at exterior doors not required to be accessible by Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code.*
2. A stair with a single riser or with two risers and a tread is permitted at locations not required to be accessible by Chapter *11A or 11B* of the *California Building Code*, provided that the risers and treads comply with Section 1009.7, the minimum depth of the tread is 13 inches (330 mm) and at least one handrail complying with Section 1012 is provided within 30 inches (762 mm) of the centerline of the normal path of egress travel on the stair.
3. A step is permitted in aisles serving seating that has a difference in elevation less than 12 inches (305 mm) at locations not required to be accessible by Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code*, provided that the risers and treads comply with Section 1028.11 and the aisle is provided with a handrail complying with Section 1028.13.

Throughout a story in Group I-2 *and I-2.1* occupancies, any change in elevation in portions of the means of egress that serve nonambulatory persons shall be by means of a ramp or sloped walkway.

[B] 1003.6 Means of egress continuity. The path of egress travel along a means of egress shall not be interrupted by any building element other than a means of egress component as specified in this chapter. Obstructions shall not be placed in the required width of a means of egress except projections permitted by this chapter. The required capacity of a means of egress system shall not be diminished along the path of egress travel.

[B] 1003.7 Elevators, escalators and moving walks. Elevators, escalators and moving walks shall not be used as a component of a required means of egress from any other part of the building.

Exception: Elevators used as an accessible means of egress in accordance with Section 1007.4.

SECTION 1004
OCCUPANT LOAD

[B] 1004.1 Design occupant load. In determining means of egress requirements, the number of occupants for whom means of egress facilities shall be provided shall be detemined in accordance with this section.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §3.27] Overcrowding.

The number of occupants of any building, structure, or portion thereof, shall not exceed the permitted or posted capacity.

[B] 1004.1.1 Cumulative occupant loads. Where the path of egress travel includes intervening rooms, areas or spaces, cumulative occupant loads shall be determined in accordance with this section.

[B] 1004.1.1.1 Intervening spaces *or accessory areas*. Where occupants egress from one *or more* room*s*, area*s* or space*s* through *others,* the design occupant load shall be *the combined occupant load of interconnected accessory or intervening spaces. Design of egress path capacity shall be* based on the cumulative *portion of* occupant loads of all rooms, areas or spaces to that point along the path of egress travel.

[B] 1004.1.1.2 Adjacent levels *for mezzanines.* *That portion of* occupant load of a mezzanine with a*ll required* egress through a room, area or space on an adjacent level shall be added to the occupant load of that room, area or space.

1004.1.1.3 Adjacent stories. *Other than for the egress components designed for convergence in accordance with Section 1005.6, the occupant load from separate stories shall not be added.*

[B] 1004.1.2 Areas without fixed seating. The number of occupants shall be computed at the rate of one occupant per unit of area as prescribed in Table 1004.1.2. For areas without fixed seating, the occupant load shall not be less than that number determined by dividing the floor area under consideration by the occupant load factor assigned to the function of the space as set forth in Table 1004.1.2. Where an intended function is not listed in Table 1004.1.2, the fire code official shall establish a function based on a listed function that most nearly resembles the intended function.

Exception: Where approved by the fire code official, the actual number of occupants for whom each occupied space, floor or building is designed, although less than those determined by calculation, shall be permitted to be used in the determination of the design occupant load.

TABLE 1004.1.2
MAXIMUM FLOOR AREA ALLOWANCES PER OCCUPANT

FUNCTION OF SPACE	OCCUPANT LOAD FACTOR[a]
Accessory storage areas, mechanical equipment room	300 gross
Agricultural building	300 gross
Aircraft hangars	500 gross
Airport terminal	
Baggage claim	20 gross
Baggage handling	300 gross
Concourse	100 gross
Waiting areas	15 gross
Assembly	
Gaming floors (keno, slots, etc.)	11 gross
Exhibit gallery and museum	30 net
Assembly with fixed seats	See Section 1004.4
Assembly without fixed seats	
Concentrated (chairs only – not fixed)	7 net
Standing space	5 net
Unconcentrated (tables and chairs)	15 net
Bowling centers, allow 5 persons for each lane including 15 feet of runway, and for additional areas	7 net
Business areas	100 gross
Courtrooms – other than fixed seating areas	40 net
Day care	35 net
Dormitories	50 gross
Educational	
Classroom area	20 net
Shops and other vocational room areas	50 net
Exercise rooms	50 gross
Group H-5 Fabrication and manufacturing areas	200 gross
Industrial areas	100 gross
Institutional areas	
Inpatient treatment areas	240 gross
Outpatient areas	100 gross
Sleeping areas	120 gross
Kitchens, commercial	200 gross
Laboratory	
Educational	*50 net*
Laboratories, noneducational	*100 net*
Laboratory suite[b]	*200 gross*
Library	
Reading rooms	50 net
Stack area	100 gross
Locker rooms	50 gross
Mall buildings – covered and open	See Section 402.8.2 of the *California Building Code*
Mercantile	
Areas on other floors	60 gross
Basement and grade floor areas	30 gross
Storage, stock, shipping areas	300 gross
Parking garages	200 gross
Residential	200 gross

(continued)

formances to not less than 0.2 footcandle (2.15 lux), provided that the required illumination is automatically restored upon activation of a premises' fire alarm system where such system is provided.

[B] 1006.3 Emergency power for illumination. The power supply for means of egress illumination shall normally be provided by the premises' electrical supply.

In the event of power supply failure, an emergency electrical system shall automatically illuminate all of the following areas:

1. Aisles and unenclosed egress stairways in rooms and spaces that require two or more means of egress.
2. Corridors, interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways in buildings required to have two or more exits.
3. Exterior egress components at other than their levels of exit discharge until exit discharge is accomplished for buildings required to have two or more exits.
4. Interior exit discharge elements, as permitted in Section 1027.1, in buildings required to have two or more exits.
5. Exterior landings as required by Section 1008.1.6 for exit discharge doorways in buildings required to have two or more exits.

The emergency power system shall provide power for a duration of not less than 90 minutes and shall consist of storage batteries, unit equipment or an on-site generator. The installation of the emergency power system shall be in accordance with Section 604.

[B] 1006.3.1 Illumination level under emergency power. Emergency lighting facilities shall be arranged to provide initial illumination that is at least an average of 1 footcandle (11 lux) and a minimum at any point of 0.1 footcandle (1 lux) measured along the path of egress at floor level. Illumination levels shall be permitted to decline to 0.6 footcandle (6 lux) average and a minimum at any point of 0.06 footcandle (0.6 lux) at the end of the emergency lighting time duration. A maximum-to-minimum illumination uniformity ratio of 40 to 1 shall not be exceeded.

SECTION 1007
ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

[B] 1007.1 Accessible means of egress required. Accessible means of egress shall comply with this section. Accessible spaces shall be provided with not less than one accessible means of egress. Where more than one means of egress are required by Section 1015.1 or 1021.1 from any accessible space, each accessible portion of the space shall be served by accessible means of egress *in at least the same number as required by Section 1015.1 or 1021.1. In addition to the requirements of this chapter, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings for persons with disabilities, shall also comply with the requirements of Chapter 11A or 11B of the California Building Code, as applicable.*

Exceptions:

1. Accessible means of egress are not required in alterations to existing buildings.
2. One accessible means of egress is required from an accessible mezzanine level in accordance with Section 1007.3, 1007.4 or 1007.5*, and Chapter 11A or 11B of the California Building Code.*
3. In assembly areas with sloped or stepped aisles, one accessible means of egress is permitted where the common path of travel is accessible and meets the requirements in Section 1028.8*, and Chapter 11A or 11B of the California Building Code.*

[B] 1007.2 Continuity and components. Each required accessible means of egress shall be continuous to a public way and shall consist of one or more of the following components:

1. Accessible routes complying with Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code*.
2. Interior exit stairways complying with Sections 1007.3 and 1022 *of this code and Chapter 11A or 11B of the California Building Code.*
3. Interior exit access stairways complying with Sections 1007.3 and 1009.3 *of this code and Chapter 11A or 11B of the California Building Code.*
4. Exterior exit stairways complying with Sections 1007.3 and 1026 and serving levels other than the level of exit discharge *of this code and Chapter 11A or 11B of the California Building Code.*
5. Elevators complying with Section 1007.4 *of this code and Chapter 11A or 11B of the California Building Code.*
6. Platform lifts complying with Section 1007.5 *of this code and Chapter 11A or 11B of the California Building Code.*
7. Horizontal exits complying with Section 1025.
8. Ramps complying with Section 1010 *of this code and Chapter 11A or 11B of the California Building Code.*
9. Areas of refuge complying with Section 1007.6.
10. Exterior area for assisted rescue complying with Section 1007.7.

[B] 1007.2.1 Elevators required. In buildings where a required accessible floor is four or more stories above or below a level of exit discharge, at least one required accessible means of egress shall be an elevator complying with Section 1007.4.

Exceptions:

1. In buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the elevator shall not be required on floors provided with a horizontal exit and located at or above the levels of exit discharge.
2. In buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the elevator shall not be required on floors provided with a ramp conforming to the provisions of Section 1010.

[B] 1007.3 Stairways. In order to be considered part of an accessible means of egress, a stairway between stories shall have a clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum between handrails, and shall either incorporate an area of refuge within an enlarged floor-level landing or shall be accessed from either an area of refuge complying with Section 1007.6 or a horizontal exit. Exit access stairways that connect levels in the same story are not permitted as part of an accessible means of egress.

Exceptions:

1. The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
2. Areas of refuge are not required at stairways in buildings equipped throughout by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
3. The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails is not required for stairways accessed from a horizontal exit.
4. Areas of refuge are not required at stairways serving open parking garages.
5. Areas of refuge are not required for smoke protected seating areas complying with Section 1028.6.2.
6. The areas of refuge are not required in Group R-2 occupancies.

[B] 1007.4 Elevators. In order to be considered part of an accessible means of egress, an elevator shall comply with the emergency operation and signaling device requirements of *California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders.* Standby power shall be provided in accordance with Section 604.2.5 of this code and Section 3003 of the *California Building Code*. The elevator shall be accessed from either an area of refuge complying with Section 1007.6 or a horizontal exit.

Exceptions:

1. Elevators are not required to be accessed from an area of refuge or horizontal exit in open parking garages.
2. Elevators are not required to be accessed from an area of refuge or horizontal exit in buildings and facilities equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
3. Elevators not required to be located in a shaft in accordance with Section 712 of the *California Building Code* are not required to be accessed from an area of refuge or horizontal exit.
4. Elevators are not required to be accessed from an area of refuge or horizontal exit for smoke-protected seating areas complying with Section 1028.6.2.

[B] 1007.5 Platform lifts. Platform (wheelchair) lifts shall not serve as part of an accessible means of egress, except where allowed as part of a required accessible route in Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code.* Standby power shall be provided in accordance with Section 604.2.6 for platform lifts permitted to serve as part of a means of egress.

[B] 1007.5.1 Openness. Platform lifts on an accessible means of egress shall not be installed in a fully enclosed hoistway.

[B] 1007.6 Areas of refuge. Every required area of refuge shall be accessible from the space it serves by an accessible means of egress. The maximum travel distance from any accessible space to an area of refuge shall not exceed the travel distance permitted for the occupancy in accordance with Section 1016.1. Every required area of refuge shall have direct access to a stairway complying with Section 1007.3 or an elevator complying with Section 1007.4. Where an elevator lobby is used as an area of refuge, the shaft and lobby shall comply with Section 1022.10 for smokeproof enclosures except where the elevators are in an area of refuge formed by a horizontal exit or smoke barrier.

[B] 1007.6.1 Size. Each area of refuge shall be sized to accommodate *two* wheelchair spaces that are not less than 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) *The total number of such 30-inch by 48-inch (762 mm by 1219 mm) spaces per story shall be not less than one for every 200 persons of calculated occupant load served by the area of refuge.* Such wheelchair spaces shall not reduce the required means of egress width. Access to any of the required wheelchair spaces in an area of refuge shall not be obstructed by more than one adjoining wheelchair space.

Exception: *The enforcing agency may reduce the size of each required area of refuge to accommodate one wheelchair space that is not less than 30 inches by 48 inches on floors where the occupant load is less than 200.*

[B] 1007.6.2 Separation. Each area of refuge shall be separated from the remainder of the story by a smoke barrier complying with Section 709 of the *California Building Code* or a horizontal exit complying with Section 1025. Each area of refuge shall be designed to minimize the intrusion of smoke.

Exception: Areas of refuge located within an enclosure for exit access stairways or interior exit stairways.

[B] 1007.6.3 Two-way communication. Areas of refuge shall be provided with a two-way communication system complying with Sections 1007.8.1 and 1007.8.2.

[B] 1007.7 Exterior area for assisted rescue. Exterior areas for assisted rescue shall be accessed by an accessible route from the area served. Exterior areas for assisted rescue shall be permitted in accordance with Section 1007.7.1 or 1007.7.2.

[B] 1007.7.1 Level of exit discharge. Where the exit discharge does not include an accessible route from an exit located on a level of exit discharge to a public way, an exterior area of assisted rescue shall be provided on the exterior landing in accordance with Sections 1007.7.3 through 1007.7.6.

[B] 1007.7.2 Outdoor facilities. Where exit access from the area serving outdoor facilities is essentially open to the outside, an exterior area of assisted rescue is permitted as an alternative to an area of refuge. Every required exterior area of assisted rescue shall have direct access to an interior stairway, exterior stairway, or elevator serving as an accessible means of egress component. The exterior area of assisted rescue shall comply with Sections 1007.7.3 through 1007.7.6, and shall be provided with a two-way communication system complying with Sections 1007.8.1 and 1007.8.2.

[B] 1007.7.3 Size. Each exterior area for assisted rescue shall be sized to accommodate wheelchair spaces in accordance with Section 1007.6.1.

[B] 1007.7.4 Separation. Exterior walls separating the exterior area of assisted rescue from the interior of the building shall have a minimum fire-resistance rating of 1 hour, rated for exposure to fire from the inside. The fire-resistance-rated exterior wall construction shall extend horizontally 10 feet (3048 mm) beyond the landing on either side of the landing or equivalent fire-resistance-rated construction is permitted to extend out perpendicular to the exterior wall 4 feet (1219 mm) minimum on the side of the landing. The fire-resistance-rated construction shall extend vertically from the ground to a point 10 feet (3048 mm) above the floor level of the area for assisted rescue or to the roof line, whichever is lower. Openings within such fire-resistance-rated exterior walls shall be protected in accordance with Section 716 of the *California Building Code.*

[B] 1007.7.5 Openness. The exterior area for assisted rescue shall be open to the outside air. The sides other than the separation walls shall be at least 50 percent open, and the open area shall be distributed so as to minimize the accumulation of smoke or toxic gases.

[B] 1007.7.6 Stairway. Stairways that are part of the means of egress for the exterior area for assisted rescue shall provide a clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails.

Exception: The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails is not required at stairways serving buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

[B] 1007.8 Two-way communication. A two-way communication system shall be provided at the elevator landing on each accessible floor that is one or more stories above or below the story of exit discharge complying with Sections 1007.8.1 and 1007.8.2.

Exceptions:

1. Two-way communication systems are not required at the elevator landing where the two-way communication system is provided within areas of refuge in accordance with Section 1007.6.3.
2. Two-way communication systems are not required on floors provided with ramps conforming to the provisions of Section 1010.

[B] 1007.8.1 System requirements. Two-way communication systems shall provide communication between each required location *and* a central control point location approved by the fire department. Where the central control point is not constantly attended, a two-way communication system shall have a timed automatic telephone dial-out capability to a*n approved* monitoring location. The two-way communication system shall include both audible and visible signals.

1007.8.2 Directions. Directions for the use of the two-way communication system, instructions for summoning assistance via the two-way communication system and written identification of the *specific story, floor* location, *and building address or other building identifier* shall be posted adjacent to the two-way communication system.

[B] 1007.9 Signage. Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be provided as shown:

1. Each door providing access to an area of refuge from an adjacent floor area shall be identified by a sign stating: AREA OF REFUGE.
2. Each door providing access to an exterior area for assisted rescue shall be identified by a sign stating: EXTERIOR AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE.

Signage shall comply with Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code* requirements for visual characters and include the International Symbol of Accessibility. Where exit sign illumination is required by Section 1011.3, the signs shall be illuminated. Additionally, raised character and Braille signage complying with Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code* shall be located at each door to an area of refuge and exterior area for assisted rescue in accordance with Section 1011.4.

[B] 1007.10 Directional signage. Direction signage *complying with Chapter 11B, Section 11B-703.5,* indicating the location of the other means of egress and which are accessible means of egress shall be provided at the following:

1. At exits serving a required accessible space but not providing an approved accessible means of egress.
2. At elevator landings.
3. Within areas of refuge.

[B] 1007.11 Instructions. In areas of refuge and exterior areas for assisted rescue, instructions on the use of the area under emergency conditions shall be posted. The instructions shall include all of the following:

1. Persons able to use the exit stairway do so as soon as possible, unless they are assisting others.
2. Information on planned availability of assistance in the use of stairs or supervised operation of elevators and how to summon such assistance.
3. Directions for use of the two-way communications system where provided.

1007.12 Alarms/emergency warning systems/accessibility. *If emergency warning systems are required, they shall activate a means of warning the hearing impaired. Emergency warning systems as part of the fire-alarm system shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 as amended in Chapter 80.*

SECTION 1008
DOORS, GATES AND TURNSTILES

[B] 1008.1 Doors. Means of egress doors shall meet the requirements of this section. Doors serving a means of egress system shall meet the requirements of this section and Section 1020.2. Doors provided for egress purposes in numbers greater than required by this code shall meet the requirements of this section.

Means of egress doors shall be readily distinguishable from the adjacent construction and finishes such that the doors are easily recognizable as doors. Mirrors or similar reflecting materials shall not be used on means of egress doors. Means of egress doors shall not be concealed by curtains, drapes, decorations or similar materials.

[B] 1008.1.1 Size of doors. The minimum width of each door opening shall be sufficient for the occupant load thereof and shall provide a clear width of *not less than* 32 inches (813 mm). Clear openings of doorways with swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees (1.57 rad). Where this section requires a minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) and a door opening includes two door leaves without a mullion, one leaf shall provide a clear opening width of 32 inches (813 mm). The maximum width of a swinging door leaf shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) nominal. Means of egress doors in a Group I-2 *or I-2.1* occupancy used for the movement of beds *and litter patients* shall provide a clear width not less than *44* inches (*1118* mm). The height of door openings shall not be less than *80* inches (*2032* mm).

Exceptions:

1. The minimum and maximum width shall not apply to door openings that are not part of the required means of egress in Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies.
2. Door openings to resident sleeping units in Group I-3 occupancies shall have a clear width of not less than 28 inches (711 mm).
3. Door openings to storage closets less than 10 square feet (0.93 m^2) in area shall not be limited by the minimum width.
4. Width of door leaves in revolving doors that comply with Section 1008.1.4.1 shall not be limited.
5. Door openings within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit shall not be less than 78 inches (1981 mm) in height.
6. Exterior door openings in dwelling units and sleeping units, other than the required exit door, shall not be less than 76 inches (1930 mm) in height.
7. In other than Group R-1 occupancies, the minimum widths shall not apply to interior egress doors within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit that is not required to be adaptable or accessible as specified in Chapter 11A or 11B *of the California Building Code.*

[B] 1008.1.1.1 Projections into clear width. There shall not be projections into the required clear width lower than 34 inches (864 mm) above the floor or ground. Projections into the clear opening width between 34 inches (864 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) above the floor or ground shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm).

Exception*s*:

1. Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the floor.

2. In a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy, there shall be no projections into the clear width of doors used for the movement of beds and litter patients in the means of egress.

[B] 1008.1.2 Door swing. Egress doors shall be of the pivoted or side-hinged swinging type.

Exceptions:

1. Private garages, office areas, factory and storage areas with an occupant load of 10 or less.
2. Group I-3 occupancies used as a place of detention.
3. Critical or intensive care patient rooms within suites of health care facilities.
4. Doors within or serving a single dwelling unit in Groups R-2 and R-3.
5. In other than Group H occupancies, revolving doors complying with Section 1008.1.4.1.
6. In other than Group H occupancies, horizontal sliding doors complying with Section 1008.1.4.3 are permitted in a means of egress.
7. Power-operated doors in accordance with Section 1008.1.4.2.
8. Doors serving a bathroom within an individual sleeping unit in Group R-1.
9. In other than Group H occupancies, manually operated horizontal sliding doors are permitted in a means of egress from spaces with an occupant load of 10 or less.
10. *In Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies, exit doors serving an occupant load of 10 or more may be of the pivoted or balanced type.*

Doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel where serving a room or area containing an occupant load of 50 or more persons or a Group H occupancy. *For Group L* *occupancies, see Section 443.6.2 of the California Building Code.*

In a Group I-2 occupancy, all required exterior egress doors shall open in the direction of egress, regardless of the occupant load served.

[B] 1008.1.3 Door opening force. The force for pushing or pulling open interior swinging egress doors, other than fire doors, shall not exceed 5 pounds (22 N). For other swinging doors, as well as sliding and folding doors, the door latch shall release when subjected to a 15-pound (67 N) force. The door shall be set in motion when subjected to a 30-pound (133 N) force. The door shall swing to a full-open position when subjected to a 15-pound (67 N) force.

[B] 1008.1.3.1 Location of applied forces. Forces shall be applied to the latch side of the door.

[B] 1008.1.4 Special doors. Special doors and security grilles shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1008.1.4.1 through 1008.1.4.4.

[B] 1008.1.4.1 Revolving doors. Revolving doors shall comply with the following:

1. Each revolving door shall be capable of collapsing into a bookfold position with parallel egress paths providing an aggregate width of 36 inches (914 mm).
2. A revolving door shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the foot of or top of stairs or escalators. A dispersal area shall be provided between the stairs or escalators and the revolving doors.
3. The revolutions per minute (rpm) for a revolving door shall not exceed those shown in Table 1008.1.4.1.
4. Each revolving door shall have a side-hinged swinging door which complies with Section 1008.1 in the same wall and within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the revolving door.
5. Revolving doors shall not be part of an accessible route required by Section 1007 and Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code.*

TABLE 1008.1.4.1
REVOLVING DOOR SPEEDS

INSIDE DIAMETER (feet-inches)	POWER-DRIVEN-TYPE SPEED CONTROL (rpm)	MANUAL-TYPE SPEED CONTROL (rpm)
6-6	11	12
7-0	10	11
7-6	9	11
8-0	9	10
8-6	8	9
9-0	8	9
9-6	7	8
10-0	7	8

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

[B] 1008.1.4.1.1 Egress component. A revolving door used as a component of a means of egress shall comply with Section 1008.1.4.1 and the following three conditions:

1. Revolving doors shall not be given credit for more than 50 percent of the required egress capacity.
2. Each revolving door shall be credited with no more than a 50-person capacity.
3. Each revolving door shall be capable of being collapsed when a force of not more than 130 pounds (578 N) is applied within 3 inches (76 mm) of the outer edge of a wing.

[B] 1008.1.4.1.2 Other than egress component. A revolving door used as other than a component of a means of egress shall comply with Section 1008.1.4.1. The collapsing force of a revolving door not used as a component of a means of egress shall not be more than 180 pounds (801 N).

Exception: A collapsing force in excess of 180 pounds (801 N) is permitted if the collapsing force is reduced to not more than 130 pounds (578 N) when at least one of the following conditions is satisfied:

1. There is a power failure or power is removed to the device holding the door wings in position.
2. There is an actuation of the automatic sprinkler system where such system is provided.
3. There is an actuation of a smoke detection system which is installed in accordance with Section 907 to provide coverage in areas within the building which are within 75 feet (22 860 mm) of the revolving doors.
4. There is an actuation of a manual control switch, in an approved location and clearly defined, which reduces the holding force to below the 130-pound (578 N) force level.

[B] 1008.1.4.2 Power-operated doors. Where means of egress doors are operated by power, such as doors with a photoelectric-actuated mechanism to open the door upon the approach of a person, or doors with power-assisted manual operation, the design shall be such that in the event of power failure, the door is capable of being opened manually to permit means of egress travel or closed where necessary to safeguard means of egress. The forces required to open these doors manually shall not exceed those specified in Section 1008.1.3, except that the force to set the door in motion shall not exceed 50 pounds (220 N). The door shall be capable of swinging from any position to the full width of the opening in which such door is installed when a force is applied to the door on the side from which egress is made. Full-power-operated doors shall comply with BHMA A156.10. Power-assisted and low-energy doors shall comply with BHMA A156.19.

Exceptions:

1. Occupancies in Group I-3.
2. Horizontal sliding doors complying with Section 1008.1.4.3.
3. For a biparting door in the emergency break-out mode, a door leaf located within a multiple-leaf opening shall be exempt from the minimum 32-inch (813 mm) single-leaf requirement of Section 1008.1.1, provided a minimum 32-inch (813 mm) clear opening is provided when the two biparting leaves meeting in the center are broken out.

[B] 1008.1.4.3 Horizontal sliding doors. In other than Group H occupancies, horizontal sliding doors permitted to be a component of a means of egress in accordance with Exception 6 to Section 1008.1.2 shall comply with all of the following criteria:

1. The doors shall be power operated and shall be capable of being operated manually in the event of power failure.
2. The doors shall be openable by a simple method from both sides without special knowledge or effort.
3. The force required to operate the door shall not exceed 30 pounds (133 N) to set the door in motion and 15 pounds (67 N) to close the door or open it to the minimum required width.
4. The door shall be openable with a force not to exceed 15 pounds (67 N) when a force of 250 pounds (1100 N) is applied perpendicular to the door adjacent to the operating device.
5. The door assembly shall comply with the applicable fire protection rating and, where rated, shall be self-closing or automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.5.9.3 of the *California Building Code,* shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 80 and shall comply with Section 716 of the *California Building Code.*
6. The door assembly shall have an integrated standby power supply.
7. The door assembly power supply shall be electrically supervised.
8. The door shall open to the minimum required width within 10 seconds after activation of the operating device.

* **[B] 1008.1.4.4 Security grilles.** In Groups B, F, M and S, horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles are permitted at the main exit and shall be openable from the inside without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort during periods that the space is occupied. The grilles shall remain secured in the full-open position during the period of occupancy by the general public. Where two or more means of egress are required, not more than one-half of the exits or exit access doorways shall be equipped with horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles.

1008.1.4.4.1 Special provisions school classrooms. *School classrooms constructed after January 1, 1990, not equipped with automatic sprinkler systems, which have metal grilles or bars on all their windows and do not have at least two exit doors within 3 feet (914 mm) of each end of the classroom opening to the exterior of the building or to a common hallway used for evacuation purposes, shall have an inside release for the grilles or bars on at least one window farthest from the exit doors. The window or windows with the inside release shall be clearly marked as emergency exits.*

[B] 1008.1.5 Floor elevation. There shall be a floor or landing on each side of a door. Such floor or landing shall be at the same elevation on each side of the door. Landings shall be level except for exterior landings, which are permitted to have a slope not to exceed 0.25 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

Exceptions:

1. Doors serving individual dwelling units in Groups R-2 and R-3 where the following apply:
    1.1. A door is permitted to open at the top step of an interior flight of stairs, provided the door does not swing over the top step.
    1.2. Screen doors and storm doors are permitted to swing over stairs or landings.
2. Exterior doors as provided for in Section 1003.5, Exception 1, and Section 1020.2, which are not on an accessible route.
3. In Group R-3 occupancies not required to be Accessible units, Type A units or Type B units, the landing at an exterior doorway shall not be more than $7^3/_4$ inches (197 mm) below the top of the threshold, provided the door, other than an exterior storm or screen door, does not swing over the landing.
4. Variations in elevation due to differences in finish materials, but not more than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).
5. Exterior decks, patios or balconies that are part of Type B dwelling units, have impervious surfaces and that are not more than 4 inches (102 mm) below the finished floor level of the adjacent interior space of the dwelling unit.

[B] 1008.1.6 Landings at doors. Landings shall have a width not less than the width of the stairway or the door, whichever is greater. Doors in the fully open position shall not reduce a required dimension by more than 7 inches (178 mm). When a landing serves an occupant load of 50 or more, doors in any position shall not reduce the landing to less than one-half its required width. Landings shall have a length measured in the direction of travel of not less than 44 inches (1118 mm).

Exception: Landing length in the direction of travel in Groups R-3 and U and within individual units of Group R-2 need not exceed 36 inches (914 mm).

[B] 1008.1.7 Thresholds. Thresholds at doorways shall not exceed $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) in height above the finished floor and landing for sliding doors serving dwelling units or $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) above the finished floor and landing for other doors. Raised thresholds and floor level changes greater than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) at doorways shall be beveled with a slope not greater than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope).

Exception: In occupancy Group R-2 or R-3, threshold heights for sliding and side-hinged exterior doors shall be permitted to be up to $7^3/_4$ inches (197 mm) in height if all of the following apply:

1. The door is not part of the required means of egress.
2. The door is not part of an accessible route as required by Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code*.
3. The door is not part of an *adaptable or accessible dwelling unit.*

[B] 1008.1.8 Door arrangement. Space between two doors in a series shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum plus the width of a door swinging into the space. Doors in a series shall swing either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors.

Exceptions:

1. The minimum distance between horizontal sliding power-operated doors in a series shall be 48 inches (1219 mm).
2. Storm and screen doors serving individual dwelling units in Groups R-2 and R-3 need not be spaced 48 inches (1219 mm) from the other door.
3. Doors within individual dwelling units in Groups R-2 and R-3 *other than adaptable or accessible dwelling units*.

[B] 1008.1.9 Door operations. Except as specifically permitted by this section egress doors shall be readily openable from the egress side without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

[B] 1008.1.9.1 Hardware. Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices on doors required to be accessible by Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code* shall not require tight grasping, tight pinching or twisting of the wrist to operate.

These design requirements for door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices, intended for use on required means of egress doors in other than Group R and M occupancies with an occupant load of 10 or less, shall comply with SFM Standard 12-10-2, Section 12-10-202, contained in the CCR, Title 24, Part 12, California Referenced Standards Code.

[B] 1008.1.9.2 Hardware height. Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices shall be installed 34 inches (864 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the finished floor. Locks used only for security purposes and not used for normal operation are permitted at any height.

Exception: Access doors or gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas and hot tubs shall be permitted to have operable parts of the release of latch on self-latching devices at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground, provided the self-latching devices are not also self-locking devices operated by means of a key, electronic opener or integral combination lock.

[B] 1008.1.9.3 Locks and latches. Locks and latches shall be permitted to prevent operation of doors where any of the following exists:

1. Places of detention or restraint.
2. In buildings in occupancy Group A having an occupant load of 300 or less, Groups B, F, M and S, and in places of religious worship, the main exterior door or doors are permitted to be equipped with key-operated locking devices from the egress side provided:
    - 2.1. The locking device is readily distinguishable as locked;
    - 2.2. A readily visible durable sign is posted on the egress side on or adjacent to the door stating: THIS DOOR TO REMAIN UNLOCKED WHEN BUILDING IS OCCUPIED. The sign shall be in letters 1-inch (25 mm) high on a contrasting background; and
    - 2.3. The use of the key-operated locking device is revokable by the fire code official for due cause.
3. Where egress doors are used in pairs, approved automatic flush bolts shall be permitted to be used, provided that the door leaf having the automatic flush bolts has no doorknob or surface-mounted hardware.
4. Doors from individual dwelling or sleeping units of Group R occupancies having an occupant load of 10 or less are permitted to be equipped with a night latch, dead bolt or security chain, provided such devices are openable from the inside without the use of a key or tool.
5. Fire doors after the minimum elevated temperature has disabled the unlatching mechanism in accordance with listed fire door test procedures.

[B] 1008.1.9.4 Bolt locks. Manually operated flush bolts or surface bolts are not permitted.

Exceptions:

1. On doors not required for egress in individual dwelling units or sleeping units.

2. Where a pair of doors serves a storage or equipment room, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf.
3. Where a pair of doors serves an occupant load of less than 50 persons in a Group B, F or S occupancy, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf. The inactive leaf shall contain no doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.
4. Where a pair of doors serves a Group B, F or S occupancy, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf provided such inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress width requirements and the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. The inactive leaf shall contain no doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.
5. Where a pair of doors serves patient care rooms in Group I-2 occupancies, self-latching edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf provided that the inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress width requirements and the inactive leaf contains no doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.

[B] 1008.1.9.5 Unlatching. The unlatching of any door or leaf shall not require more than one operation.

Exceptions:

1. Places of detention or restraint.
2. Where manually operated bolt locks are permitted by Section 1008.1.9.4.
3. Doors with automatic flush bolts as permitted by Section 1008.1.9.3, Exception 3.
4. Doors from individual dwelling units and sleeping units of Group R occupancies as permitted by Section 1008.1.9.3, Exception 4.

[B] 1008.1.9.5.1 Closet and bathroom doors in Group R-4 occupancies. In Group R-4 occupancies, closet doors that latch in the closed position shall be openable from inside the closet, and bathroom doors that latch in the closed position shall be capable of being unlocked from the ingress side.

[B] 1008.1.9.6 *Reserved.*

[B] 1008.1.9.7 Delayed egress locks. Approved, listed, delayed egress locks shall be permitted to be installed on doors serving any occupancy except Group A, E, H and *L* occupancie*s*.

> ***Exception:*** *Group A occupancy courtrooms are permitted to utilize delayed egress locks.*

Buildings *with delayed egress locks shall be* equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 *and* an approved automatic smoke detection system installed in accordance with Section 907, provided that the doors unlock in accordance with Items 1 through *9* below. A building occupant shall not be required to pass through more than one door equipped with a delayed egress lock before entering an *exit. Delayed egress devices shall conform to all of the following:*

1. The doors unlock upon actuation of the automatic sprinkler system or automatic fire detection system.
2. The doors unlock upon loss of *electrical* power *to any one of the following:*
   - *2.1. The egress-control device itself.*
   - *2.2. The smoke detection system.*
   - *2.3. Means of egress illumination as required by Section 1006.*
3. The door locks shall have the capability of being unlocked by a signal from *a switch located in an approved location.*
4. The initiation of an irreversible process which will release the latch in not more than 15 seconds when a force of not more than 15 pounds (67 N) is applied for 1 second to the release device. Initiation of the irreversible process shall activate an audible signal in the vicinity of the door. Once the door lock has been released by the application of force to the releasing device, relocking shall be by manual means only. *The time delay established for each egress-control device shall not be field adjustable. For applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, see Chapter 11B of the California Building Code.*

   Exception: *In facilities housing Alzheimer's or dementia clients,* a delay of not more than 30 seconds is permitted.
5. A sign shall be provided on the door located above and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the release device reading: *"KEEP PUSHING. THIS DOOR WILL OPEN IN 15 [30] SECONDS. ALARM WILL SOUND." Sign lettering shall be at least 1 inch (25 mm) in height and shall have a stroke of not less than $^{1}/_{8}$ inch (3.2 mm).*
   - *5.1. A tactile sign shall also be provided in Braille and raised characters, which complies with Chapter 11B of the California Building Code.*
6. Emergency lighting shall be provided at the door.
7. *Actuation of the panic bar or other door-latching hardware shall activate an audible signal at the door.*
8. *The unlatching shall not require more than one operation.*
9. *Regardless of the means of deactivation, relocking of the egress-control device shall be by manual means only at the door.*

buildings of Groups F, H and S from a mezzanine not more than 250 square feet (23 m^2) in area and which serves not more than five occupants; in buildings of Group I-3 from a guard tower, observation station or control room not more than 250 square feet (23 m^2) in area and for access to unoccupied roofs.

[B] 1009.13.1 Handrails of alternating tread devices. Handrails shall be provided on both sides of alternating tread devices and shall comply with Section 1012.

[B] 1009.13.2 Treads of alternating tread devices. Alternating tread devices shall have a minimum tread depth of 5 inches (127 mm), a minimum projected tread depth of $8^1/_2$ inches (216 mm), a minimum tread width of 7 inches (178 mm) and a maximum riser height of $9^1/_2$ inches (241 mm). The tread depth shall be measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projections of adjacent treads. The riser height shall be measured vertically between the leading edges of adjacent treads. The riser height and tread depth provided shall result in an angle of ascent from the horizontal of between 50 and 70 degrees (0.87 and 1.22 rad). The initial tread of the device shall begin at the same elevation as the platform, landing or floor surface.

Exception: Alternating tread devices used as an element of a means of egress in buildings from a mezzanine area not more than 250 square feet (23 m^2) in area which serves not more than five occupants shall have a minimum tread depth of 3 inches (76 mm) with a minimum projected tread depth of $10^1/_2$ inches (267 mm). The rise to the next alternating tread surface shall not exceed 8 inches (203 mm).

[B] 1009.14 Ship ladders. Ship ladders are permitted to be used in Group I-3 as a component of a means of egress to and from control rooms or elevated facility observation stations not more than 250 square feet (23 m^2) with not more than three occupants and for access to unoccupied roofs.

Ship ladders shall have a minimum tread depth of 5 inches (127 mm). The tread shall be projected such that the total of the tread depth plus the nosing projection is no less than $8^1/_2$ inches (216 mm). The maximum riser height shall be $9^1/_2$ inches (241 mm).

Handrails shall be provided on both sides of ship ladders. The minimum clear width at and below the handrails shall be 20 inches (508 mm).

[B] 1009.15 Handrails. Stairways shall have handrails on each side and shall comply with Section 1012. Where glass is used to provide the handrail, the handrail shall also comply with Section 2407 of the *California Building Code.*

[DSA-AC] *For applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, see Chapter 11B of the California Building Code.*

Exceptions:

1. Handrails for aisle stairs provided in accordance with Section 1028.13.
2. Stairways within dwelling units and spiral stairways are permitted to have a handrail on one side only.
3. Decks, patios and walkways that have a single change in elevation where the landing depth on each side of the change of elevation is greater than what is required for a landing do not require handrails.
4. In Group R-3 occupancies, *a continuous run of treads or flight of stairs with less than four risers does not require handrails.*
5. Changes in room elevations of three or fewer risers within dwelling units and sleeping units in Groups R-2 and R-3 do not require handrails.

[B] 1009.16 Stairway to roof. In buildings four or more stories above grade plane, one stairway shall extend to the roof surface, unless the roof has a slope steeper than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope). In buildings without an occupied roof, access to the roof from the top story shall be permitted to be by an alternating tread device.

[B] 1009.16.1 Roof access. Where a stairway is provided to a roof, access to the roof shall be provided through a penthouse complying with Section 1509.2 of the *California Building Code.*

Exception: In buildings without an occupied roof, access to the roof shall be permitted to be a roof hatch or trap door not less than 16 square feet (1.5 m^2) in area and having a minimum dimension of 2 feet (610 mm).

[B] 1009.16.2 Protection at roof hatch openings. Where the roof hatch opening providing the required access is located within 10 feet (3049 mm) of the roof edge, such roof access or roof edge shall be protected by guards installed in accordance with the provisions of Section 1013.

[B] 1009.17 Stairway to elevator equipment. Roofs and penthouses containing elevator equipment that must be accessed for maintenance are required to be accessed by a stairway.

SECTION 1010
RAMPS

[B] 1010.1 Scope. The provisions of this section shall apply to ramps used as a component of a means of egress.

Exceptions:

1. Other than ramps that are part of the accessible routes providing access in accordance with Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code,* ramped aisles within assembly rooms or spaces shall conform with the provisions in Section 1028.11.
2. Curb ramps shall comply with Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code*.
3. Vehicle ramps in parking garages for pedestrian exit access shall not be required to comply with Sections 1010.4 through 1010.10 when they are not an accessible route serving accessible parking spaces, other required accessible elements or part of an accessible means of egress.

[B] 1010.2 Enclosure. All interior exit ramps shall be enclosed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 1022. Exit access ramps shall be enclosed in accordance with the provisions of Section 1009.3 for enclosure of stairways.

[B] 1010.3 Slope. Ramps used as part of a means of egress shall have a running slope not steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope). The slope of other pedestrian ramps shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in eight units horizontal (12.5-percent slope).

Exception: Aisle ramp slope in a room or space used for assembly purposes shall comply with Section 1028.11.

[B] 1010.4 Cross slope. The slope measured perpendicular to the direction of travel of a ramp shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

[B] 1010.5 Vertical rise. The rise for any ramp run shall be 30 inches (762 mm) maximum.

[B] 1010.6 Minimum dimensions. The minimum dimensions of means of egress ramps shall comply with Sections 1010.6.1 through 1010.6.3.

[B] 1010.6.1 Width. The minimum width of a means of egress ramp shall not be less than that required for corridors by Section 1018.2. The clear width of a ramp between handrails, if provided, or other permissible projections shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.

[B] 1010.6.2 Headroom. The minimum headroom in all parts of the means of egress ramp shall not be less than 80 inches (2032 mm).

[B] 1010.6.3 Restrictions. Means of egress ramps shall not reduce in width in the direction of egress travel. Projections into the required ramp and landing width are prohibited. Doors opening onto a landing shall not reduce the clear width to less than 42 inches (1067 mm).

[B] 1010.7 Landings. Ramps shall have landings at the bottom and top of each ramp, points of turning, entrance, exits and at doors. Landings shall comply with Sections 1010.7.1 through 1010.7.5.

[B] 1010.7.1 Slope. Landings shall have a slope not steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in any direction. Changes in level are not permitted.

[B] 1010.7.2 Width. The landing shall be at least as wide as the widest ramp run adjoining the landing.

[B] 1010.7.3 Length. The landing length shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. In Group R-2 and R-3 individual dwelling and sleeping units that are not required to be Accessible units *in accordance with Chapter 11A or 11B of the California Building Code*, landings are permitted to be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.
2. Where the ramp is not a part of an accessible route, the length of the landing shall not be required to be more than 48 inches (1219 mm) in the direction of travel.

[B] 1010.7.4 Change in direction. Where changes in direction of travel occur at landings provided between ramp runs, the landing shall be 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm) minimum.

Exception: In Group R-2 and R-3 individual dwelling or sleeping units that are not required to be Accessible units or adaptable units in accordance with Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code*, landings are permitted to be 36 inches by 36 inches (914 mm by 914 mm) minimum.

[B] 1010.7.5 Doorways. Where doorways are located adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearances required by Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code* are permitted to overlap the required landing area.

[B] 1010.8 Ramp construction. All ramps shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building, except that wood handrails shall be permitted for all types of construction.

[B] 1010.8.1 Ramp surface. The surface of ramps shall be of slip-resistant materials that are securely attached.

[B] 1010.8.2 Outdoor conditions. Outdoor ramps and outdoor approaches to ramps shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces.

[B] 1010.9 Handrails. Ramps with a rise greater than 6 inches (152 mm) shall have handrails on both sides. Handrails shall comply with Section 1012.

Exception: Handrails for ramped aisles provided in accordance with Section 1028.13.

[B] 1010.10 Edge protection. Edge protection complying with Section 1010.10.1 or 1010.10.2 shall be provided on each side of ramp runs and at each side of ramp landings.

Exceptions:

1. Edge protection is not required on ramps that are not required to have handrails, provided they have flared sides that comply with Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code* curb ramp provisions.
2. Edge protection is not required on the sides of ramp landings serving an adjoining ramp run or stairway.
3. Edge protection is not required on the sides of ramp landings having a vertical drop off of not more than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) within 10 inches (254 mm) horizontally of the required landing area.
4. In assembly spaces with fixed seating, edge protection is not required on the sides of ramps where the ramps provide access to the adjacent seating and aisle accessways.

[B] 1010.10.1 Curb, rail, wall or barrier. A curb, rail, wall or barrier shall be provided to serve as edge protection. A curb must be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) in height. Barriers must be constructed so that the barrier prevents the passage of a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere, where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (102 mm) of the floor or ground surface.

[B] 1010.10.2 Extended floor or ground surface. The floor or ground surface of the ramp run or landing shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of a handrail complying with Section 1012.

[B] 1010.11 Guards. Guards shall be provided where required by Section 1013 and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1013.

SECTION 1011
EXIT SIGNS

[B] 1011.1 Where required. Exits and exit access doors shall be marked by an approved exit sign readily visible from any direction of egress travel. The path of egress travel to exits and within exits shall be marked by readily visible exit signs to clearly indicate the direction of egress travel in cases where the exit or the path of egress travel is not immediately visible to the occupants. Intervening means of egress doors within exits shall be marked by exit signs. Exit sign placement shall be such that no point in an exit access corridor or exit passageway is more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) or the listed viewing distance for the sign, whichever is less, from the nearest visible exit sign.

Exceptions:

1. Exit signs are not required in rooms or areas that require only one exit or exit access.
2. Main exterior exit doors or gates that are obviously and clearly identifiable as exits need not have exit signs where approved by the fire code official.
3. Exit signs are not required in occupancies in Group U and individual sleeping units or dwelling units in Group R-1, R-2, R-3 *or R-3.1.*
4. Exit signs are not required *where inmates are housed or held* in dayrooms, sleeping rooms or dormitories in occupancies in Group I-3.
5. In occupancies in Groups A-4 and A-5, exit signs are not required on the seating side of vomitories or openings into seating areas where exit signs are provided in the concourse that are readily apparent from the vomitories. Egress lighting is provided to identify each vomitory or opening within the seating area in an emergency.

[B] 1011.2 Floor-level exit signs in Group R-1. *See Section 1011.7.*

[B] 1011.3 Illumination. Exit signs shall be internally or externally illuminated.

Exception: Tactile signs required by Section 1011.4 need not be provided with illumination.

[B] 1011.4 Raised character and Braille exit signs. *Tactile exit signs shall be required at the following locations:*

1. *Each grade-level exterior exit door that is required to comply with Section 1011.1 shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the word, "EXIT."*
2. *Each exit door that is required to comply with Section 1011.1, and that leads directly to a grade-level exterior exit by means of a stairway or ramp, shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the following words, as appropriate:*
    - *2.1. "EXIT STAIR DOWN"*
    - *2.2. "EXIT RAMP DOWN"*
    - *2.3. "EXIT STAIR UP"*
    - *2.4. "EXIT RAMP UP"*
3. *Each exit door that is required to comply with Section 1011.1, and that leads directly to a grade-level exterior exit by means of an exit enclosure or an exit passageway shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the words, "EXIT ROUTE."*
4. *Each exit access door from an interior room or area to a corridor or hallway that is required to comply with Section 1011.1 shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the words "EXIT ROUTE."*
5. *Each exit door through a horizontal exit that is required to comply with Section 1011.1 shall be identified by a sign with the words, "TO EXIT."*

Raised character and Braille exit signs shall comply with Chapter 11B of the California Building Code.

[B] 1011.5 Internally illuminated exit signs. Electrically powered, self-luminous and photoluminescent exit signs shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 924 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Chapter 27 of the *California Building Code*. Exit signs shall be illuminated at all times.

[B] 1011.6 Externally illuminated exit signs. Externally illuminated exit signs shall comply with Sections 1011.6.1 through 1011.6.3.

[B] 1011.6.1 Graphics. Every exit sign and directional exit sign shall have plainly legible letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high with the principal strokes of the letters not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) wide. The word "EXIT" shall have letters having a width not less than 2 inches (51 mm) wide, except the letter "I," and the minimum spacing between letters shall not be less than $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm). Signs larger than the minimum established in this section shall have letter widths, strokes and spacing in proportion to their height.

The word "EXIT" shall be in high contrast with the background and shall be clearly discernible when the means of exit sign illumination is or is not energized. If a chevron directional indicator is provided as part of the exit sign, the construction shall be such that the direction of the chevron directional indicator cannot be readily changed.

[B] 1011.6.2 Exit sign illumination. The face of an exit sign illuminated from an external source shall have an intensity of not less than 5 footcandles (54 lux).

[B] 1011.6.3 Power source. Exit signs shall be illuminated at all times. To ensure continued illumination for a duration of not less than 90 minutes in case of primary power loss, the sign illumination means shall be connected to an emergency power system provided from storage batteries, unit equipment or an on-site generator. The installation of the emergency power system shall be in accordance with Section 604.

Exception: Approved exit sign illumination means that provide continuous illumination independent of external power sources for a duration of not less than 90 minutes, in case of primary power loss, are not required to be connected to an emergency electrical system.

1011.7 Floor-level exit signs. *Where exit signs are required by Chapter 10, additional approved low-level exit signs which are internally or externally illuminated photoluminescent or self-luminous shall be provided in all interior corridors of Group A, E, I and R-2.1 occupancies and in all areas serving guest rooms of hotels in Group R, Division 1 occupancies.*

Exceptions:

1. *Group A occupancies that are protected throughout by an approved supervised fire sprinkler system.*
2. *Group E occupancies where direct exits have been provided from each classroom.*
3. *Group I and R-2.1 occupancies which are provided with smoke barriers constructed in accordance with Section 407.5 of the California Building Code.*
4. *Group I-3 occupancies.*

The bottom of the sign shall not be less than 6 inches (152 mm) or more than 8 inches (203 mm) above the floor level and shall indicate the path of exit travel. For exit and exit-access doors, the sign shall be on the door or adjacent to the door with the closest edge of the sign or marker within 4 inches (102 mm) of the door frame.

Note: *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143, this California amendment applies to all newly constructed buildings or structures, subject to this section, for which a building permit is issued (or construction commenced, where no building permit is issued) on or after January 1, 1989.*

1011.8 Path marking. *When exit signs are required by Chapter 10, in addition to approved floor-level exit signs, approved path marking shall be installed at floor level or no higher than 8 inches (203 mm) above the floor level in all interior-rated exit corridors of unsprinklered Group A, R-1 and R-2 occupancies.*

Such marking shall be continuous, except as interrupted by door-ways, corridors or other such architectural features, in order to provide a visible delineation along the path of travel.

Note: *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143, the California amendments of this section shall apply to all newly constructed buildings or structures, subject to this section, for which a building permit is issued (or construction commenced, where no building permit is issued) on or after January 1, 1989.*

SECTION 1012
HANDRAILS

[B] 1012.1 Where required. Handrails for stairways and ramps shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.8 of the *California Building Code.* Handrails required for stairways by Section 1009.15 shall comply with Sections 1012.2 through 1012.9. Handrails required for ramps by Section 1010.9 shall comply with Sections 1012.2 through 1012.8.

[B] 1012.2 Height. Handrail height, measured above stair tread nosings, or finish surface of ramp slope, shall be uniform, not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm). Handrail height of alternating tread devices and ship ladders, measured above tread nosings, shall be uniform, not less than 30 inches (762 mm) and not more than 34 inches (864 mm).

Exceptions:

1. When handrail fittings or bendings are used to provide continuous transition between flights, the fittings or bendings shall be permitted to exceed the maximum height.
2. In Group R-3 occupancies; within dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are associated with a Group R-3 occupancy or associated with individual dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; when handrail fittings or bendings are used to provide continuous transition between flights, transition at winder treads, transition from handrail to guard, or when used at the start of a flight, the handrail height at the fittings or bendings shall be permitted to exceed the maximum height.

[B] 1012.3 Handrail graspability. All required handrails shall comply with Section 1012.3.1 or shall provide equivalent graspability.

Exception: In Group R-3 occupancies; within dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy or accessory to individual dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; handrails shall be Type I in accordance with Section 1012.3.1, Type II in accordance with Section 1012.3.2 or shall provide equivalent graspability.

[B] 1012.3.1 Type I. Handrails with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of at least $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) and not greater than 2 inches (51 mm). Where the handrail is not circular, it shall have a perimeter dimension of at least 4 inches (102 mm) and not greater than $6^1/_4$ inches (160 mm) with a maximum cross-sectional dimension of $2^1/_4$ inches (57 mm) and minimum cross-sectional dimension of 1 inch (25 mm). Edges shall have a minimum radius of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm).

[B] 1012.3.2 Type II. Handrails with a perimeter greater than $6^1/_4$ inches (160 mm) shall provide a graspable finger recess area on both sides of the profile. The finger recess shall begin within a distance of $^3/_4$ inch (19 mm) measured vertically from the tallest portion of the profile and achieve a depth of at least $^5/_{16}$ inch (8 mm) within $^7/_8$ inch (22 mm) below the widest portion of the profile. This required depth shall continue for at least $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm) to a level that is not less than $1^3/_4$ inches (45 mm) below the tallest portion of the profile. The minimum width of the handrail above the recess shall be $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) above the finished grade or other surface below and that are provided with window fall prevention devices that comply with ASTM F 2006.

2. Windows whose openings will not allow a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere to pass through the opening when the opening is in its largest opened position.
3. Openings that are provided with window fall prevention devices that comply with ASTM F 2090.
4. Windows that are provided with window opening control devices that comply with Section 1013.8.1.

1013.8.1 Window opening control devices. Window opening control devices shall comply with ASTM F 2090. The window opening control device, after operation to release the control device allowing the window to fully open, shall not reduce the minimum net clear opening area of the window unit to less than the area required by Section 1029.2.

SECTION 1014
EXIT ACCESS

[B] 1014.1 General. The exit access shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 1003 through 1013. Exit access arrangement shall comply with Sections 1014 through 1019.

[B] 1014.2 Egress through intervening spaces. Egress through intervening spaces shall comply with this section.

1. Egress from a room or space shall not pass through adjoining or intervening rooms or areas, except where such adjoining rooms or areas and the area served are accessory to one or the other, are not a Group H occupancy and provide a discernible path of egress travel to an *exit*.

   Exception: Means of egress are not prohibited through adjoining or intervening rooms or spaces in a Group H, S or F occupancy when the adjoining or intervening rooms or spaces are the same or a lesser hazard occupancy group.

2. An exit access shall not pass through a room that can be locked to prevent egress.
3. Means of egress from dwelling units or sleeping areas shall not lead through other sleeping areas, toilet rooms or bathrooms.
4. Egress shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, closets or spaces used for similar purposes.

   Exceptions:

   1. Means of egress are not prohibited through a kitchen area serving adjoining rooms constituting part of the same dwelling unit or sleeping unit.
   2. Means of egress are not prohibited through stockrooms in Group M occupancies when all of the following are met:
      - 2.1. The stock is of the same hazard classification as that found in the main retail area;
      - 2.2. Not more than 50 percent of the exit access is through the stockroom;
      - 2.3. The stockroom is not subject to locking from the egress side; and
      - 2.4. There is a demarcated, minimum 44-inch-wide (1118 mm) aisle defined by full- or partial-height fixed walls or similar construction that will maintain the required width and lead directly from the retail area to the exit without obstructions.

5. *Exits shall not pass through any room subject to locking except in Group I-3 occupancies classified as detention facilities.*

[B] 1014.2.1 Multiple tenants. Where more than one tenant occupies any one floor of a building or structure, each tenant space, dwelling unit and sleeping unit shall be provided with access to the required exits without passing through adjacent tenant spaces, dwelling units and sleeping units.

Exception: The means of egress from a smaller tenant space shall not be prohibited from passing through a larger adjoining tenant space where such rooms or spaces of the smaller tenant occupy less than 10 percent of the area of the larger tenant space through which they pass; are the same or similar occupancy group; a discernable path of egress travel to an exit is provided; and the means of egress into the adjoining space is not subject to locking from the egress side. A required means of egress serving the larger tenant space shall not pass through the smaller tenant space or spaces.

1014.2.2 Basement exits in Group I-2 occupancies. *For additional requirements for occupancies in Group I-2 or I-2.1, see Section 407 of the California Building Code.*

[B] 1014.3 Common path of egress travel. The common path of egress travel shall not exceed the common path of egress travel distances in Table 1014.3.

SECTION 1015
EXIT AND EXIT ACCESS DOORWAYS

[B] 1015.1 Exits or exit access doorways from spaces. Two exits or exit access doorways from any space shall be provided where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The occupant load of the space exceeds one of the values in Table 1015.1.

   Exceptions:

   1. In Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies, one means of egress is permitted within and from individual dwelling units with a maximum occupant load of 20 where the dwelling unit is equipped

[B] TABLE 1014.3
COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL

OCCUPANCY	WITHOUT SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)		WITH SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)
	Occupant Load		
	≤ 30	> 30	
B, S[d]	100	75	100[a]
U	100	75	75[a]
F	75	75	100[a]
H-1, H-2, H-3	Not Permitted	Not Permitted	25[a]
R-2	75	75	125[b]
R-3[e]	75	75	125[b]
I-3	100	100	100[a]
All others[c, f]	75	75	75[a, b]

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

b. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

c. For a room or space used for assembly purposes having fixed seating, see Section 1028.8.

d. The length of a common path of egress travel in a Group S-2 open parking garage shall not be more than 100 feet (30 480 mm).

e. The length of a common path of egress travel in a Group R-3 occupancy located in a mixed occupancy building.

f. For the distance limitation in Group I-2 *or I-1.2,* see Section 407.4 of the *California Building Code.*

    throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

    2. Care suites in Group I-2 *or I-2.1* occupancies complying with Section 407.4.3 *of the California Building Code.*

2. The common path of egress travel exceeds one of the limitations of Section 1014.3.
3. Where required by Section 1015.3, 1015.4, 1015.5 or 1015.6.
4. *In detention and correctional facilities and holding cells, such as are found in courthouse buildings, when the occupant load is more than 20 see Section 408.3.11 of the California Building Code.*

Where a building contains mixed occupancies, each individual occupancy shall comply with the applicable requirements for that occupancy. Where applicable, cumulative occupant loads from adjacent occupancies shall be considered in accordance with the provisions of Section 1004.1.

[B] TABLE 1015.1
SPACES WITH ONE EXIT OR EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY

OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM OCCUPANT LOAD
A, B, E, F, M, U	49
H-1, H-2, H-3	3
H-4, H-5, *I-2.1*, I-3, I-4, R	10
S	29
L	*See Section 443.6.1 of the California Building Code*

a. For holding cells, see Section 408.3.11 of the California Building Code.

[B] 1015.1.1 Three or more exits or exit access doorways. Three exits or exit access doorways shall be provided from any space with an occupant load of 501 to 1,000. Four exits or exit access doorways shall be provided from any space with an occupant load greater than 1,000.

[B] 1015.2 Exit or exit access doorway arrangement. Required exits shall be located in a manner that makes their availability obvious. Exits shall be unobstructed at all times. Exit and exit access doorways shall be arranged in accordance with Sections 1015.2.1 and 1015.2.2. *Exit access doorways, contributing to the total number of exits or exit access doorways required by Sections 1015.1 and 1015.1.1, shall lead to separate exits.*

[B] 1015.2.1 Two exits or exit access doorways. Where two exits or exit access doorways are required from any portion of the exit access, the exit doors or exit access doorways shall be placed a distance apart equal to not less than one-half of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building or area to be served measured in a straight line between exit doors or exit access doorways. Interlocking or scissor stairs shall be counted as one exit stairway.

Exceptions:

1. Where interior exit stairways are interconnected by a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated corridor conforming to the requirements of Section 1018, the required exit separation shall be measured along the shortest direct line of travel within the corridor.
2. Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the separation distance of the exit doors or exit access doorways shall not be less than one-third of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the area served.

[B] 1015.2.2 Three or more exits or exit access doorways. Where access to three or more exits is required, at least two exit doors or exit access doorways shall be arranged in accordance with the provisions of Section 1015.2.1. *Additional required exit or exit access doorways shall be arranged a reasonable distance apart so that if one becomes blocked, the others will be available.*

[B] 1015.3 Boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms. Two exit access doorways are required in boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms where the area is over 500 square feet (46 m^2) and any fuel-fired equipment exceeds 400,000 British thermal units (Btu) (422 000 KJ) input capacity. Where two exit access doorways are required, one is permitted to be a fixed ladder or an alternating tread device. Exit access doorways shall be separated by a horizontal distance equal to one-half the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the room.

[B] 1015.4 Refrigeration machinery rooms. Machinery rooms larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) shall have not less than two exits or exit access doorways. Where two exit access doorways are required, one such doorway is permitted to be served by a fixed ladder or an alternating tread device. Exit access doorways shall be separated by a horizontal distance equal to one-half the maximum horizontal dimension of room.

All portions of machinery rooms shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an exit or exit access doorway. An increase in travel distance is permitted in accordance with Section 1016.1.

Doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel, regardless of the occupant load served. Doors shall be tight fitting and self-closing.

[B] 1015.5 Refrigerated rooms or spaces. Rooms or spaces having a floor area larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2), containing a refrigerant evaporator and maintained at a temperature below 68°F (20°C), shall have access to not less than two exits or exit access doorways.

Travel distance shall be determined as specified in Section 1016.1, but all portions of a refrigerated room or space shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an exit or exit access doorway where such rooms are not protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system. Egress is allowed through adjoining refrigerated rooms or spaces.

Exception: Where using refrigerants in quantities limited to the amounts based on the volume set forth in the *California Mechanical Code*.

[B] 1015.6 Day care means of egress. Day care facilities, rooms or spaces where care is provided for more than 10 children that are 2 years of age or less, shall have access to not less than two exits or exit access doorways.

1015.7 Large Family Day-care Home. *Every story or basement of a large family day-care home shall be provided with two exits which are remotely located from each other. Every required exit shall be of a size to permit the installation of a door not less than 32 inches (813 mm) in clear width and not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) in height. A manually operated horizontal sliding door may be used as one of the two required exits.*

Where basements are used for day care purposes, one of the two required exits shall provide access directly to the exterior without entering the first story. The second exit from the basement may either pass through the story above or exit directly to the exterior.

Rooms used for day care purposes shall not be located above the first story.

Exception: *Buildings equipped with an automatic sprinkler system throughout and which have at least one of the required exits providing access directly to the exterior. NFPA 13R may be used in large family day-care homes. The sprinkler omissions of NFPA 13R shall not apply unless approved by the enforcing agency.*

Exit doors, including manually operated horizontal sliding doors, shall be openable from the inside without use of a key or any special knowledge or effort.

Tables 1021.1 and 1021.2 are not applicable to this occupancy classification.

SECTION 1016

EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE

[B] 1016.1 General. Travel distance within the exit access portion of the means of egress system shall be in accordance with this section.

[B] 1016.2 Limitations. Exit access travel distance shall not exceed the values given in Table 1016.2.

[B] TABLE 1016.2
EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE[a]

OCCUPANCY	WITHOUT SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)	WITH SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)
A, E, F-1, M, R, S-1	200	250[b]
R-2.1	Not Permitted	250[b, c]
B	200	300[c]
F-2, S-2, U	300	400[c]
H-1	Not Permitted	75[c]
H-2	Not Permitted	100[c]
H-3	Not Permitted	150[c]
H-4	Not Permitted	175[c]
H-5	Not Permitted	200[c]
I-2, *I-2.1,* I-3[d], I-4	Not Permitted	200[c]
L	*Not Permitted*	*200[c]*

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. See the following sections for modifications to exit access travel distance requirements:

Section 402.8 of the *California Building Code*: For the distance limitation in malls.

Section 404.9 of the *California Building Code:* For the distance limitation through an atrium space.

Section 407.4 of the *California Building Code:* For the distance limitation in Group I-2 *or I-2.1.*

Section 408.3.10 of the California Building Code: For increased limitation in Group I-3.

Sections 408.6.1 and 408.8.1 of the *California Building Code*: For the distance limitations in Group I-3.

Section 411.4 of the *California Building Code:* For the distance limitation in special amusement buildings.

(continued)

Section 1015.4: For the distance limitation in refrigeration machinery rooms.
Section 1015.5: For the distance limitation in refrigerated rooms and spaces.
Section 1016.3: For increased limitation in Groups F-1 and S-1.
Section 1021.2: For buildings with one exit.
Section 1028.7: For increased limitation in assembly seating.
Section 1028.7: For increased limitation for assembly open-air seating.
Section 3103.4 of the *California Building Code:* For temporary structures.
Section 3104.9 of the *California Building Code:* For pedestrian walkways.

b. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

c. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

d. Not permitted in nonsprinklered Group I-3 occupancies.

[B] 1016.2.1 Exterior egress balcony increase. Exit access travel distances specified in Table 1016.2 shall be increased up to an additional 100 feet (30 480 mm) provided the last portion of the exit access leading to the exit occurs on an exterior egress balcony constructed in accordance with Section 1019. The length of such balcony shall not be less than the amount of the increase taken.

1016.2.2 Group F-1 and S-1 increase. *The maximum exit access travel distance shall be 400 feet (122 m) in Group F-1 or S-1 occupancies where all of the following are met:*

1. *The portion of the building classified as Group F-1 or S-1 is limited to one story in height,*
2. *The minimum height from the finished floor to the bottom of the ceiling or roof slab or deck is 24 feet (7315 mm), and*
3. *The building is equipped throughout with an automatic fire sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.*

[B] 1016.3 Measurement. Exit access travel distance shall be measured from the most remote point within a story along the natural and unobstructed path of horizontal and vertical egress travel to the entrance to an exit.

Exceptions:

1. In open parking garages, exit access travel distance is permitted to be measured to the closest riser of an exit access stairway or the closest slope of an exit access ramp.
2. In outdoor facilities with open exit access components, exit access travel distance is permitted to be measured to the closest riser of an exit access stairway or the closest slope of an exit access ramp.

[B] 1016.3.1 Exit access stairways and ramps. Travel distance on exit access stairways or ramps shall be included in the exit access travel distance measurement. The measurement along stairways shall be made on a plane parallel and tangent to the stair tread nosings in the center of the stair and landings. The measurement along ramps shall be made on the walking surface in the center of the ramp and landings.

SECTION 1017
AISLES

[DSA-AC] In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 403, as applicable.

[B] 1017.1 General. Aisles and aisle accessways serving as a portion of the exit access in the means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. Aisles or aisle accessways shall be provided from all occupied portions of the exit access which contain seats, tables, furnishings, displays and similar fixtures or equipment. The required width of aisles shall be unobstructed.

Exception: Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §3.06(a)] Bonding of Chairs and Spacing of Tables.

(a) Bonding of chairs. In every Group A and Group E occupancy, all loose seats, folding chairs or similar seating facilities that are not fixed to the floor shall be bonded together in groups of not less than three.

Exceptions:

(1) When not more than 200 such seats, chairs or facilities are provided, bonding thereof may be deleted.

(2) The bonding of chairs shall not be required when tables are provided, as when the occupancy is used for dining or similar purposes.

(3) Upon approval of the enforcing agency, the bonding of chairs shall not be required when the placement and location of such chairs does not obstruct any required exit or any line of egress toward required exits and does not constitute a fire hazard as defined in California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Section 3.14.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §3.06(b)] Bonding of Chairs and Spacing of Tables.

(b) Spacing of Tables. In occupancies having rectangular conference or banquet-type tables, such tables shall be placed not less than 54 inches apart and not less than 36 inches from walls.

[B] 1017.2 Aisles in assembly spaces. Aisles and aisle accessways serving a room or space used for assembly purposes shall comply with Section 1028.

[B] 1017.3 Aisles in Groups B and M. In Group B and M occupancies, the minimum clear aisle width shall be determined by Section 1005.1 for the occupant load served, but shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm).

Exception: Nonpublic aisles serving less than 50 people and not required to be accessible by Chapter 11A or 11B of the *California Building Code* need not exceed 28 inches (711 mm) in width.

[B] 1017.4 Aisle accessways in Group M. An aisle accessway shall be provided on at least one side of each element within the merchandise pad. The minimum clear width for an aisle accessway not required to be accessible shall be 30 inches (762 mm). The required clear width of the aisle accessway shall be measured perpendicular to the elements and merchandise within the merchandise pad. The 30-inch (762 mm) minimum clear width shall be maintained to provide a path to an adjacent aisle or aisle accessway. The common path of egress travel shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) from any point in the merchandise pad.

Exception: For areas serving not more than 50 occupants, the common path of egress travel shall not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm).

[B] 1017.5 Aisles in other than assembly spaces and Groups B and M. In other than rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes and Group B and M occupancies, the minimum clear aisle width shall be determined by Section 1005.1 for the occupant load served, but shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm).

SECTION 1018
CORRIDORS

[B] 1018.1 Construction. Corridors shall be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Table 1018.1. The corridor walls required to be fire-resistance rated shall comply with Section 708 of the *California Building Code* for fire partitions.

Exceptions:

1. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in an occupancy in Group E where each room that is used for instruction has at least one door opening directly to the exterior and rooms for assembly purposes have at least one-half of the required means of egress doors opening directly to the exterior. Exterior doors specified in this exception are required to be at ground level.
2. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors contained within a dwelling or sleeping unit in an occupancy in Group R.
3. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in open parking garages.
4. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in an occupancy in Group B which is a space requiring only a single means of egress complying with Section 1015.1.
5. Corridors adjacent to the exterior walls of buildings shall be permitted to have unprotected openings on unrated exterior walls where unrated walls are permitted by Table 602 of the *California Building Code* and unprotected openings are permitted by Table 705.8 of the *California Building Code.*
6. *A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors within suites in a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy provided with an automatic sprinkler system throughout and constructed in accordance with Section 407.4.3.5 or 407.4.3.6 of the California Building Code.*

[B] 1018.2 Width. The minimum width of corridors specified in Table 1018.2 shall be as determined in Section 1005.1.

[B] 1018.3 Obstruction. The required width of corridors shall be unobstructed.

Exception: Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

[B] 1018.4 Dead ends. Where more than one exit or exit access doorway is required, the exit access shall be arranged such that there are no dead ends in corridors more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length.

Exceptions:

1. In occupancies in Group I-3 of Occupancy Condition 2, 3 or 4 (see Section 308.5), the dead end in a corridor shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).
2. In occupancies in Groups B, E, F, M, R-1, R-2, *R-2.1,* R-4, S and U, where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance

[B] TABLE 1018.1
CORRIDOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING

OCCUPANCY	OCCUPANT LOAD SERVED BY CORRIDOR	REQUIRED FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)	
		Without sprinkler system	With sprinkler system[c]
H-1, H-2, H-3	All	Not Permitted	1
H-4, H-5, *L*	Greater than 30	Not Permitted	1
A[d], B, F, M, S, U	Greater than 30	1	0
R-1, R-2, R-3, R-3.1, R-4	Greater than 10	Not Permitted	*1*
I-2[a], *I-2.1,* I-4	*Greater than 6*	Not Permitted	*1*
I-3, *R-2.1*	*Greater than 6*	Not Permitted	1[b]
E	*Greater than 10*	*1*	*1*

a. For requirements for occupancies in Groups I-2 *and I-2.1*, see Sections 407.2 and 407.3 of the *California Building Code.*

b. For a reduction in the fire-resistance rating for occupancies in Group I-3, see Section*s 408.8.1.2 and* 408.8 of the *California Building Code.*

c. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 where allowed.

d. [SFM} See Section 1028.

[B] TABLE 1018.2
MINIMUM CORRIDOR WIDTH

OCCUPANCY	WIDTH (minimum)
Any facilities not listed below	44 inches
Access to and utilization of mechanical, plumbing or electricalsystems or equipment	24 inches
With a required occupancy capacity less than 50	36 inches
Within a dwelling unit	36 inches
In Group E with a corridor having a required capacity of 100 or more	72 inches
In corridors and areas serving gurney traffic in occupancies where patients receive outpatient medical care, which causes the patient to be incapable of self-preservation	72 inches
Group I-2 in areas where required for bed movement	96 inches
Corridors in Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies serving any area caring for one or more nonambulatory persons.	96 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

with Section 903.3.1.1, the length of the dead-end corridors shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).

3. A dead-end corridor shall not be limited in length where the length of the dead-end corridor is less than 2.5 times the least width of the dead-end corridor.

[B] 1018.5 Air movement in corridors. Corridors shall not serve as supply, return, exhaust, relief or ventilation air ducts.

Exceptions:

1. Use of a corridor as a source of makeup air for exhaust systems in rooms that open directly onto such corridors, including toilet rooms, bathrooms, dressing rooms and janitor closets, shall be permitted, provided that each such corridor is directly supplied with outdoor air at a rate greater than the rate of makeup air taken from the corridor.
2. Where located within a dwelling unit, the use of corridors for conveying return air shall not be prohibited.
3. Where located within tenant spaces of 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) or less in area, utilization of corridors for conveying return air is permitted.
4. Incidental air movement from pressurized rooms within health care facilities, provided that the corridor is not the primary source of supply or return to the room.
5. *For health care facilities under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD), see the California Mechanical Code.*

[B] 1018.5.1 Corridor ceiling. Use of the space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above as a return air plenum is permitted for one or more of the following conditions:

1. The corridor is not required to be of fire-resistance-rated construction;
2. The corridor is separated from the plenum by fire-resistance-rated construction;
3. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon activation of the air-handling unit smoke detectors required by the *California Mechanical Code*;
4. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon detection of sprinkler waterflow where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; or
5. The space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above the corridor is used as a component of an approved engineered smoke control system.

[B] 1018.6 Corridor continuity. Fire-resistance-rated corridors shall be continuous from the point of entry to an exit, and shall not be interrupted by intervening rooms. Where the path of egress travel within a fire-resistance-rated corridor to the exit includes travel along unenclosed exit access stairways or ramps, the fire resistance-rating shall be continuous for the length of the stairway or ramp and for the length of the connecting corridor on the adjacent floor leading to the exit.

Exception*s*:

1. Foyers, lobbies or reception rooms constructed as required for corridors shall not be construed as intervening rooms.

2. [SFM] In fully sprinklered office buildings, corridors may lead through enclosed elevator lobbies if all areas of the building have access to at least one required exit without passing through the elevator lobby.

SECTION 1019
EGRESS BALCONIES

[B] 1019.1 General. Balconies used for egress purposes shall conform to the same requirements as corridors for width, headroom, dead ends and projections.

[B] 1019.2 Wall separation. Exterior egress balconies shall be separated from the interior of the building by walls and opening protectives as required for corridors.

Exception: Separation is not required where the exterior egress balcony is served by at least two stairs and a dead-end travel condition does not require travel past an unprotected opening to reach a stair.

[B] 1019.3 Openness. The long side of an egress balcony shall be at least 50 percent open, and the open area above the guards shall be so distributed as to minimize the accumulation of smoke or toxic gases.

[B] 1019.4 Location. Exterior egress balconies shall have a minimum fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) measured from the exterior edge of the egress balcony to adjacent lot lines and from other buildings on the same lot unless the adjacent building exterior walls and openings are protected in accordance with Section 705 of the *California Building Code* based on fire separation distance.

SECTION 1020
EXITS

[B] 1020.1 General. Exits shall comply with Sections 1020 through 1026 and the applicable requirements of Sections 1003 through 1013. An exit shall not be used for any purpose that interferes with its function as a means of egress. Once a given level of exit protection is achieved, such level of protection shall not be reduced until arrival at the exit discharge.

[B] 1020.2 Exterior exit doors. Buildings or structures used for human occupancy shall have at least one exterior door that meets the requirements of Section 1008.1.1.

[B] 1020.2.1 Detailed requirements. Exterior exit doors shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1008.1.

[B] 1020.2.2 Arrangement. Exterior exit doors shall lead directly to the exit discharge or the public way.

SECTION 1021
NUMBER OF EXITS

[B] 1021.1 General. Each story and occupied roof shall have the minimum number of *independent* exits, or access to exits, as specified in *Table 1021.1. A single exit or access to a single exit shall be permitted in accordance with Section 1021.2*. The required number of exits, or exit access stairways or ramps providing access to exits, from any story shall be maintained until arrival at grade or a public way.

[B] TABLE 1021.1
MINIMUM NUMBER OF EXITS OR ACCESS TO EXITS PER STORY

OCCUPANT LOAD PER STORY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF EXITS OR ACCESS TO EXITS FROM STORY
1-500	*2*
501-1,000	*3*
More than 1,000	*4*

[B] 1021.2 ***Single* exits.** *A single exit or access to a single exit shall be permitted* from any story or occupied roof, provided one of the following conditions exists:

1. The occupant load, number of dwelling units *and exit access travel distance does not* exceed the values in Table 1021.2(1) or 1021.2(2).
2. Rooms, areas and spaces complying with Section 1015.1 with exits that discharge directly to the exterior at the level of exit discharge are permitted to have one exit *or access to a single exit.*
3. Group R-3 occupancy buildings shall be permitted to have one exit *where each individual story complies with Table 1021.2(1).*
4. Parking garages where vehicles are mechanically parked shall be permitted to have one exit *or access to a single exit.*
5. Group R-3 and R-4 congregate residences shall be permitted to have one exit *where each individual story complies with Table 1021.2(1) or 1021.2(2).*
6. Individual single-story or multiple-story dwelling units shall be permitted to have a single exit *or access to a single exit* from the dwelling unit provided that all of the following criteria are met:
   6.1. The dwelling unit complies with Section 1015.1 as a space with one means of egress; and
   6.2. Either the exit from the dwelling unit discharges directly to the exterior at the level of exit discharge, or the exit access outside the dwelling unit's entrance door provides access to not less than two approved independent exits.

[B] 1021.2.1 Mixed occupancies. Where one exit, or exit access stairway or ramp providing access to exits at other stories, is permitted to serve individual stories, mixed occupancies shall be permitted to be served by single exits provided each individual occupancy complies with the applicable requirements of Table 1021.2(1) or Table 1021.2(2) for that occupancy. Where applicable, cumulative occupant loads from adjacent occupancies shall be considered in accordance with the provisions of Section 1004.1.

In each story of a mixed occupancy building, the maximum number of occupants served by a single exit shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the calculated number of occupants of the space divided by the allowable number of occupants *indicated in Table 1021.2(2)* for each occu-

[B] TABLE 1021.2(1)
STORIES WITH ONE EXIT OR ACCESS TO ONE EXIT FOR R-2 AND *R-3* OCCUPANCIES

STORY	OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF DWELLING UNITS	MAXIMUM EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE
Basement, first, second or third story *above grade plan*	R-2[a, b] *R-3*[a]	4 dwelling units *NA*	125 feet *NA*
Fourth story and above	*R-3*[a]	NA	*125 feet*

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NA – Not Applicable.

a. Buildings classified as Group R-2 or *R-3* equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and provided with emergency escape and rescue openings in accordance with Section 1029.

b. This table is used for R-2 occupancies consisting of dwelling units. For R-2 occupancies consisting of sleeping units, use Table 1021.2(2).

pancy does not exceed one. *Where dwelling units are located on a story with other occupancies, the actual number of dwelling units divided by 4 plus the ratio from the other occupancy does not exceed one.*

1021.2.2 Exits from specific space. *Exits serving specific spaces or areas need not be accessed by the remainder of the story when all of the following are met:*

1. *The number of exits from the entire story complies with Section 1021.1 and 1021.4.1;*
2. *The access to exits from each individual space in the story complies with Section 1015.1; and*
3. *All spaces within each portion of a story shall have access to the minimum number of approved independent exits, based on the occupant load of that portion of the story but not less than two exits.*

[B] 1021.3 Vehicular ramps. Vehicular ramps shall not be considered as an exit access ramp unless pedestrian facilities are provided.

SECTION 1022
INTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAYS AND RAMPS

[B] 1022.1 General. Interior exit stairways and interior exit ramps serving as an exit component in a means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. Interior exit stairways and ramps shall lead directly to the exterior of the building or shall be extended to the exterior of the building with an exit passageway conforming to the requirements of Section 1023, except as permitted in Section 1027.1. An interior exit stairway or ramp shall not be used for any purpose other than as a means of egress.

[B] 1022.2 Construction. Enclosures for interior exit stairways and ramps shall be constructed as fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 of the *California Building Code* or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *California Building Code*, or both. Interior exit stairway and ramp enclosures shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours where connecting four stories or more and not less than 1 hour where connecting less than four stories. The number of stories connected by the interior exit stairways or ramps shall include any basements, but not any mezzanines. Interior exit stairways and ramps shall have a fire-resistance rating not less than the floor assembly penetrated, but need not exceed 2 hours.

Exception*s*:

1. Interior exit stairways and ramps in Group I-3 occupancies in accordance with the provisions of Section 408.3.8 of the *California Building Code.*

2. Fixed guideway transit stations, constructed in accordance with Section 433 of the California Building Code.

[B] 1022.3 Termination. Interior exit stairways and ramps shall terminate at an exit discharge or a public way.

Exception: Interior exit stairways and ramps shall be permitted to terminate at an exit passageway complying with Section 1023, provided the exit passageway terminates at an exit discharge or a public way.

[B] 1022.3.1 Extension. Where interior exit stairways and ramps are extended to an exit discharge or a public way by an exit passageway, the interior exit stairway and ramp shall be separated from the exit passageway by a fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *California Building Code* or a horizontal assembly con-

[B] TABLE 1021.2(2)
STORIES WITH ONE EXIT OR ACCESS TO ONE EXIT FOR OTHER OCCUPANCIES

STORY	OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM OCCUPANTS PER STORY	MAXIMUM EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE
First story *above* or *below grade plane* basement	A, B[b], E, F[b], M, U, S[b]	49 occupants	75 feet
	H-2, H-3	3 occupants	25 feet
	H-4, H-5, I, R-1, R-2[a, c], R-4	10 occupants	75 feet
	I-2, I-2.1	*7 occupants*	*50 feet*
	S	29 occupants	100 feet
Second story *above grade plan*	B, F, M, S	29 occupants	75 feet
Third story *above grade plane* and *higher*	NP	NA	NA

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NP – Not Permitted.

NA – Not Applicable.

a. Buildings classified as Group R-2 equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and provided with emergency escape and rescue openings in accordance with Section 1029.

b. Group B, F and S occupancies in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall have a maximum travel distance of 100 feet.

c. This table is used for R-2 occupancies consisting of sleeping units. For R-2 occupancies consisting of dwelling units, use Table 1021.2(1).

structed in accordance with Section 711 of the *California Building Code,* or both. The fire-resistance rating shall be at least equal to that required for the interior exit stairway and ramp. A fire door assembly complying with Section 716.5 of the *California Building Code* shall be installed in the fire barrier to provide a means of egress from the interior exit stairway and ramp to the exit passageway. Openings in the fire barrier other than the fire door assembly are prohibited. Penetrations of the fire barrier are prohibited.

Exception: Penetrations of the fire barrier in accordance with Section 1022.5 shall be permitted.

[B] 1022.4 Openings. Interior exit stairway and ramp opening protectives shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 716 of the *California Building Code.*

Openings in interior exit stairways and ramps other than unprotected exterior openings shall be limited to those necessary for exit access to the enclosure from normally occupied spaces and for egress from the enclosure.

Elevators shall not open into interior exit stairways and ramps.

[B] 1022.5 Penetrations. Penetrations into and openings through interior exit stairways and ramps are prohibited except for required exit doors, equipment and ductwork necessary for independent ventilation or pressurization, sprinkler piping, standpipes, electrical raceway for fire department communication systems and electrical raceway serving the interior exit stairway and ramp and terminating at a steel box not exceeding 16 square inches (0.010 m^2). Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714 of the *California Building Code.* There shall be no penetrations or communicating openings, whether protected or not, between adjacent interior exit stairways and ramps.

Exception: Membrane penetrations shall be permitted on the outside of the interior exit stairway and ramp. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714.3.2 of the *California Building Code.*

[B] 1022.6 Ventilation. Equipment and ductwork for interior exit stairway and ramp ventilation as permitted by Section 1022.5 shall comply with one of the following items:

1. Such equipment and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and shall be directly connected to the interior exit stairway and ramp by ductwork enclosed in construction as required for shafts.
2. Where such equipment and ductwork is located within the interior exit stairway and ramp, the intake air shall be taken directly from the outdoors and the exhaust air shall be discharged directly to the outdoors, or such air shall be conveyed through ducts enclosed in construction as required for shafts.
3. Where located within the building, such equipment and ductwork shall be separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical equipment, with construction as required for shafts.

In each case, openings into the fire-resistance-rated construction shall be limited to those needed for maintenance and operation and shall be protected by opening protectives in accordance with Section 716 of the *California Building Code* for shaft enclosures.

The interior exit stairway and ramp ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems.

[B] 1022.7 Interior exit stairway and ramp exterior walls. Exterior walls of the interior exit stairway and ramp shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 of the *California Building Code* for exterior walls. Where nonrated walls or unprotected openings enclose the exterior of the stairway and the walls or openings are exposed by other parts of the building at an angle of less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad), the building exterior walls within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of a nonrated wall or unprotected opening shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than $^3/_4$ hour. This construction shall extend vertically from the ground to a point 10 feet (3048 mm) above the topmost landing of the stairway or to the roof line, whichever is lower.

[B] 1022.8 Discharge identification. An interior exit stairway and ramp shall not continue below its level of exit discharge unless an approved barrier is provided at the level of exit discharge to prevent persons from unintentionally continuing into levels below. Directional exit signs shall be provided as specified in Section 1011.

[B] 1022.9 Stairway identification signs. A sign shall be provided at each floor landing in an interior exit stairway and ramp connecting more than three stories designating the floor level, the terminus of the top and bottom of the interior exit stairway and ramp and the identification of the stair or ramp. The signage shall also state the story of, and the direction to, the exit discharge and the availability of roof access from the interior exit stairway and ramp for the fire department. The sign shall be located 5 feet (1524 mm) above the floor landing in a position that is readily visible when the doors are in the open and closed positions.

In addition to the stairway identification sign, raised characters and braille floor identification signs that comply with Chapter 11B of the California Building Code shall be located at the landing of each floor level, placed adjacent to the door on the latch side, in all enclosed stairways in buildings two or more stories in height to identify the floor level. At the exit discharge level, the sign shall include a raised five pointed star located to the left of the identifying floor level. The outside diameter of the star shall be the same as the height of the raised characters.

[B] 1022.9.1 Signage requirements. Stairway identification signs shall comply with all of the following requirements:

1. The signs shall be a minimum size of 18 inches (457 mm) by 12 inches (305 mm).
2. The letters designating the identification of the stair enclosure, *such* as STAIR NO. 1 or WEST STAIR, *shall be placed at the top of the sign and* shall be a minimum of 1$^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in height *block lettering with $^1/_4$-inch (6 mm) strokes.*
3. The number designating the floor level shall be a minimum of 5 inches (127 mm) in height *with ¾-*

inch (19 mm) strokes and located in the center of the sign. *The mezzanine levels shall have the letter "M" preceding the floor level. basement levels shall have the letter "B" preceding the floor number.*

4. All other lettering and numbers shall be a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) in height.
5. *The stairway's upper terminus, such as ROOF ACCESS or NO ROOF ACCESS, shall be placed under the stairway identification in 1-inch-high (25 mm) block lettering with $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6 mm) strokes.*
6. *The lower and upper terminus of the stairway shall be placed at the bottom of the sign in 1-inch-high (25 mm) block lettering with $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6 mm) strokes.*
7. Characters and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background, with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.
8. When signs required by Section 1022.9 are installed in the interior exit stairways and ramps of buildings subject to Section 1024, the signs shall be made of the same materials as required by Section 1024.4.

[B] 1022.10 Smokeproof enclosures. Where required by Section 403.5.4 or 405.7.2 of the *California Building Code*, interior exit stairways and ramps shall be smokeproof enclosures in accordance with Section 909.20 of the *California Building Code.*

[B] 1022.10.1 Termination and extension. A smokeproof enclosure shall terminate at an exit discharge or a public way. The smokeproof enclosure shall be permitted to be extended by an exit passageway in accordance with Section 1022.3. The exit passageway shall be without openings other than the fire door assembly required by Section 1022.3.1 and those necessary for egress from the exit passageway. The exit passageway shall be separated from the remainder of the building by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the California Building Code or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *California Building Code,* or both.

Exceptions:

1. Openings in the exit passageway serving a smokeproof enclosure are permitted where the exit passageway is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the smokeproof enclosure, and openings are protected as required for access from other floors.
2. The fire barrier separating the smokeproof enclosure from the exit passageway is not required, provided the exit passageway is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the smokeproof enclosure.
3. A smokeproof enclosure shall be permitted to egress through areas on the level of exit discharge or vestibules as permitted by Section 1027.

[B] 1022.10.2 Enclosure access. Access to the stairway within a smokeproof enclosure shall be by way of a vestibule or an open exterior balcony.

SECTION 1023
EXIT PASSAGEWAYS

[B] 1023.1 Exit passageway. Exit passageways serving as an exit component in a means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. An exit passageway shall not be used for any purpose other than as a means of egress.

[B] 1023.2 Width. The minimum width of exit passageways shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1 but such width shall not be less than 44 inches (1118 mm), except that exit passageways serving an occupant load of less than 50 shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width. The required width of exit passageways shall be unobstructed.

Exception: Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

The clear width of exit passageways in a Group I-2 occupancy used for the movement of beds and litters shall be 44 inches (1118 mm) minimum.

[B] 1023.3 Construction. Exit passageway enclosures shall have walls, floors and ceilings of not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating, and not less than that required for any connecting interior exit stairway or ramp. Exit passageways shall be constructed as fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 of the *California Building Code* or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *California Building Code*, or both.

[B] 1023.4 Termination. Exit passageways on the level of exit discharge shall terminate at an exit discharge. Exit passageways on other levels shall terminate at an exit.

[B] 1023.5 Openings and penetrations. *E*xit passageway opening protectives shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 716 of the *California Building Code*.

Except as permitted in Section 402.8.7 of the *California Building Code*, openings in exit passageways other than exterior openings shall be limited to those necessary for exit access to the exit passageway from normally occupied spaces and for egress from the exit passageway.

Where an interior exit stairway or ramp is extended to an exit discharge or a public way by an exit passageway, the exit passageway shall also comply with Section 1022.3.1.

Elevators shall not open into an exit passageway.

[B] 1023.6 Penetrations. Penetrations into and openings through an exit passageway are prohibited except for required exit doors, equipment and ductwork necessary for independent pressurization, sprinkler piping, standpipes, electrical raceway for fire department communication and electrical raceway serving the exit passageway and terminating at a steel box not exceeding 16 square inches (0.010 m^2). Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714 of the *California Building Code.* There shall be no penetrations or communicating openings, whether protected or not, between adjacent exit passageways.

Exception: Membrane penetrations shall be permitted on the outside of the exit passageway. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714.3.2 of the *California Building Code.*

to return through the compartment from which egress originates.

SECTION 1026
EXTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAYS AND RAMPS

[B] 1026.1 Exterior exit stairways and ramps. Exterior exit stairways and ramps serving as an element of a required means of egress shall comply with this section.

[B] 1026.2 Use in a means of egress. Exterior exit stairways shall not be used as an element of a required means of egress for Group I-2 occupancies. For occupancies in other than Group I-2, exterior exit stairways and ramps shall be permitted as an element of a required means of egress for buildings not exceeding six stories above grade plane or which are not high-rise buildings.

[B] 1026.3 Open side. Exterior exit stairways and ramps serving as an element of a required means of egress shall be open on at least one side. An open side shall have a minimum of 35 square feet (3.3 m^2) of aggregate open area adjacent to each floor level and the level of each intermediate landing. The required open area shall be located not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the adjacent floor or landing level.

[B] 1026.4 Side yards. The open areas adjoining exterior exit stairways or ramps shall be either yards, courts or public ways; the remaining sides are permitted to be enclosed by the exterior walls of the building.

[B] 1026.5 Location. Exterior exit stairways and ramps shall have a minimum fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) measured from the exterior edge of the stairway or ramp, including landings, to adjacent lot lines and from other buildings on the same lot unless the adjacent building exterior walls and openings are protected in accordance with Section 705 of the *California Building Code* based on fire separation distance.

[B] 1026.6 Exterior stairway and ramp protection. Exterior exit stairways and ramps shall be separated from the interior of the building as required in Section 1022.2. Openings shall be limited to those necessary for egress from normally occupied spaces.

Exceptions:

1. Separation from the interior of the building is not required for occupancies, other than those in Group R-1 or R-2, in buildings that are no more than two stories above grade plane where a level of exit discharge serving such occupancies is the first story above grade plane.
2. Separation from the interior of the building is not required where the exterior stairway or ramp is served by an exterior ramp or balcony that connects two remote exterior stairways or other approved exits with a perimeter that is not less than 50 percent open. To be considered open, the opening shall be a minimum of 50 percent of the height of the enclosing wall, with the top of the openings no less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the top of the balcony.
3. Separation from the interior of the building is not required for an exterior stairway or ramp located in a building or structure that is permitted to have unenclosed exit access stairways in accordance with Section 1009.3.
4. Separation from the interior of the building is not required for exterior stairways or ramps connected to open-ended corridors, provided that Items 4.1 through 4.5 are met:
    - 4.1.The building, including corridors, stairways or ramps, shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
    - 4.2. The open-ended corridors comply with Section 1018.
    - 4.3. The open-ended corridors are connected on each end to an exterior exit ramp or stairway complying with Section 1026.
    - 4.4. The exterior walls and openings adjacent to the exterior exit stairway or ramp comply with Section 1022.7.
    - 4.5. At any location in an open-ended corridor where a change of direction exceeding 45 degrees (0.79 rad) occurs, a clear opening of not less than 35 square feet (3.3 m^2) or an exterior stairway or ramp shall be provided. Where clear openings are provided, they shall be located so as to minimize the accumulation of smoke or toxic gases.

SECTION 1027
EXIT DISCHARGE

[B] 1027.1 General. Exits shall discharge directly to the exterior of the building. The exit discharge shall be at grade or shall provide *a* direct *path of egress travel* to grade. The exit discharge shall not reenter a building. The combined use of Exceptions 1 and 2 shall not exceed 50 percent of the number and capacity of the required exits.

Exceptions:

1. A maximum of 50 percent of the number and capacity of interior exit stairways and ramps is permitted to egress through areas on the level of exit discharge provided all of the following are met:
    - 1.1. Such enclosures egress to a free and unobstructed path of travel to an exterior exit door and such exit is readily visible and identifiable from the point of termination of the enclosure.
    - 1.2. The entire area of the level of exit discharge is separated from areas below by construction conforming to the fire-resistance rating for the enclosure.
    - 1.3. The egress path from the interior exit stairway and ramp on the level of exit discharge is protected throughout by an approved auto-

matic sprinkler system. All portions of the level of exit discharge with access to the egress path shall either be protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, or separated from the egress path in accordance with the requirements for the enclosure of interior exit stairways or ramps.

2. A maximum of 50 percent of the number and capacity of the interior exit stairways and ramps is permitted to egress through a vestibule provided all of the following are met:
   - 2.1.The entire area of the vestibule is separated from areas below by construction conforming to the fire-resistance rating for the enclosure.
   - 2.2.The depth from the exterior of the building is not greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) and the length is not greater than 30 feet (9144 mm).
   - 2.3.The area is separated from the remainder of the level of exit discharge by construction providing protection at least the equivalent of approved wired glass in steel frames.
   - 2.4.The area is used only for means of egress and exits directly to the outside.
3. Horizontal exits complying with Section 1025 shall not be required to discharge directly to the exterior of the building.

[B] 1027.2 Exit discharge capacity. The capacity of the exit discharge shall be not less than the required discharge capacity of the exits being served.

[B] 1027.3 Exit discharge components. Exit discharge components shall be sufficiently open to the exterior so as to minimize the accumulation of smoke and toxic gases.

[B] 1027.4 Egress courts. Egress courts serving as a portion of the exit discharge in the means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of Section 1027.

[B] 1027.4.1 Width. The minimum width of egress courts shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1, but such width shall not be less than 44 inches (1118 mm), except as specified herein. Egress courts serving Group R-3 and U occupancies shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width. The required width of egress courts shall be unobstructed to a height of 7 feet (2134 mm).

Exception: Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

Where an egress court exceeds the minimum required width and the width of such egress court is then reduced along the path of exit travel, the reduction in width shall be gradual. The transition in width shall be affected by a guard not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in height and shall not create an angle of more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) with respect to the axis of the egress court along the path of egress travel. In no case shall the width of the egress court be less than the required minimum.

1027.4.2 Construction and openings. Where an egress court serving a building or portion thereof is less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in width, the egress court walls shall have not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) above the floor of the court. Openings within such walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than $^3/_4$ hour.

Exceptions:

1. Egress courts serving an occupant load of less than 10.
2. Egress courts serving Group R-3.

[B] 1027.5 Access to a public way. The exit discharge shall provide a direct and unobstructed access to a public way.

Exception: Where access to a public way cannot be provided, a safe dispersal area shall be provided where all of the following are met:

1. The area shall be of a size to accommodate at least 5 square feet (0.46 m^2) for each person.
2. *For other than Group E buildings t*he area shall be located on the same lot at least 50 feet (15 240 mm) away from the building requiring egress. *For Group E buildings, the area shall be located on the same lot at least 50 feet (15 240 mm) away from any building.*
3. The area shall be permanently maintained and identified as a safe dispersal area.
4. The area shall be provided with a safe and unobstructed path of travel from the building.

SECTION 1028
ASSEMBLY

[B] 1028.1 General. A room or space used for assembly purposes which contains seats, tables, displays, equipment or other material shall comply with this section.

Exception: *Group A occupancies within Group I-3 facilities are exempt from egress requirements of Section 1028.*

[B] 1028.1.1 Bleachers. Bleachers, grandstands and folding and telescopic seating, that are not building elements, shall comply with ICC 300.

[B] 1028.1.1.1 Spaces under grandstands and bleachers. When spaces under grandstands or bleachers are used for purposes other than ticket booths less than 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) and toilet rooms, such spaces shall be separated by fire barriers complying with Section 707 of the *California Building Code* and horizontal assemblies complying with Section 711 of the *California Building Code* with not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

[B] 1028.2 Assembly main exit. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes that has an occupant load of greater than 300 and is provided with a main exit, the main exit shall be of sufficient width to accommodate not less than one-half of the occupant load, but such width shall not be less than the total required width of all means of egress leading to the exit. Where the building is classified as a Group A occupancy, the main exit shall front on at least one street or an unoccupied space of not less than *20 feet (6096 mm)* in width that adjoins a street or public way. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes where there is no well-defined main exit or where multiple main exits are provided, exits shall be permitted to be distributed around the perimeter of the building provided that the total width of egress is not less than 100 percent of the required width *and at least one exit shall discharge on a street or an unoccupied space of not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in width that adjoins a street or publicway. Smoke-protected seating shall comply with Section 1028.6.2..*

[B] 1028.3 Assembly other exits. In addition to having access to a main exit, each level in a building used for assembly purposes having an occupant load greater than 300 and provided with a main exit, shall be provided with additional means of egress that shall provide an egress capacity for at least one-half of the total occupant load served by that level and shall comply with Section 1015.2. *At least one-half of the additional means of egress required by this section shall be directly to an exit, or through a lobby, that is not used to access the main exit, to an exit, or to a 1-hour rated corridor to an exit.* In a building used for assembly purposes where there is no well-defined main exit or where multiple main exits are provided, exits for each level shall be permitted to be distributed around the perimeter of the building, provided that the total width of egress is not less than 100 percent of the required width *and at least one exit shall discharge on a street or an unoccupied space of not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in width that adjoins a street or publicway. Smoke-protected seating shall comply with Section 1028.6.2.*

1028.3.1 Occupant loads 300 or less. *Group A occupancies or assembly occupancies accessory to Group E occupancies that have an occupant load of 100 or more and 300 or less, shall have at least one of the required means of egress directly to an exit, or through a lobby, that is not used to access the other required exit, to an exit, or to a 1-hour rated corridor to an exit or continuous through a 1-hour rated lobby to an exit. At least one exit shall discharge on a street or an unoccupied space of not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in width that adjoins a street or public way.*

[B] 1028.4 Foyers and lobbies. In Group A-1 occupancies, where persons are admitted to the building at times when seats are not available, such persons shall be allowed to wait in a lobby or similar space, provided such lobby or similar space shall not encroach upon the required clear width of the means of egress. Such foyer, if not directly connected to a public street by all the main entrances or exits, shall have a straight and unobstructed corridor or path of travel to every such main entrance or exit.

[B] 1028.5 Interior balcony and gallery means of egress. For balconies, galleries or press boxes having a seating capacity of 50 or more located in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes, at least two means of egress shall be provided, with one from each side of every balcony, gallery or press box and at least one leading directly to an exit.

[B] 1028.6 Width of means of egress for assembly. The clear width of aisles and other means of egress shall comply with Section 1028.6.1 where smoke-protected seating is not provided and with Section 1028.6.2 or 1028.6.3 where smoke-protected seating is provided. The clear width shall be measured to walls, edges of seating and tread edges except for permitted projections.

[B] 1028.6.1 Without smoke protection. The clear width of the means of egress shall provide sufficient capacity in accordance with all of the following, as applicable:

1. At least 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) of width for each occupant served shall be provided on stairs having riser heights 7 inches (178 mm) or less and tread depths 11 inches (279 mm) or greater, measured horizontally between tread nosings.
2. At least 0.005 inch (0.127 mm) of additional stair width for each occupant shall be provided for each 0.10 inch (2.5 mm) of riser height above 7 inches (178 mm).
3. Where egress requires stair descent, at least 0.075 inch (1.9 mm) of additional width for each occupant shall be provided on those portions of stair width having no handrail within a horizontal distance of 30 inches (762 mm).
4. Ramped means of egress, where slopes are steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope), shall have at least 0.22 inch (5.6 mm) of clear width for each occupant served. Level or ramped means of egress, where slopes are not steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope), shall have at least 0.20 inch (5.1 mm) of clear width for each occupant served.

[B] 1028.6.2 Smoke-protected seating. The clear width of the means of egress for smoke-protected assembly seating shall not be less than the occupant load served by the egress element multiplied by the appropriate factor in Table 1028.6.2. The total number of seats specified shall be those within the space exposed to the same smoke-protected environment. Interpolation is permitted between the specific values shown. A life safety evaluation, complying with NFPA 101, shall be done for a facility utilizing the reduced width requirements of Table 1028.6.2 for smoke-protected assembly seating.

Exception: For an outdoor smoke-protected assembly seating with an occupant load not greater than 18,000, the clear width shall be determined using the factors in Section 1028.6.3.

[B] 1028.6.2.1 Smoke control. Means of egress serving a smoke-protected assembly seating area shall be provided with a smoke control system complying with Section 909 or natural ventilation designed to maintain the smoke level at least 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor of the means of egress.

[B] 1028.6.2.2 Roof height. A smoke-protected assembly seating area with a roof shall have the lowest portion of the roof deck not less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the highest aisle or aisle accessway.

[B] TABLE 1028.6.2
WIDTH OF AISLES FOR SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY

TOTAL NUMBER OF SEATS IN THE SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING	INCHES OF CLEAR WIDTH PER SEAT SERVED			
	Stairs and aisle steps with handrails within 30 inches	Stairs and aisle steps without handrails within 30 inches	Passageways, doorways and ramps not steeper than 1 in 10 in slope	Ramps steeper than 1 in 10 in slope
Equal to or less than 5,000	0.200	0.250	0.150	0.165
10,000	0.130	0.163	0.100	0.110
15,000	0.096	0.120	0.070	0.077
20,000	0.076	0.095	0.056	0.062
Equal to or greater than 25,000	0.060	0.075	0.044	0.048

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Exception: A roof canopy in an outdoor stadium shall be permitted to be less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the highest aisle or aisle accessway provided that there are no objects less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the highest aisle or aisle accessway.

[B] 1028.6.2.3 Automatic sprinklers. Enclosed areas with walls and ceilings in buildings or structures containing smoke-protected assembly seating shall be protected with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

Exceptions:

1. The floor area used for contests, performances or entertainment provided the roof construction is more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) above the floor level and the use is restricted to low fire hazard uses.
2. Press boxes and storage facilities less than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) in area.
3. Outdoor seating facilities where seating and the means of egress in the seating area are essentially open to the outside.

[B] 1028.6.3 Width of means of egress for outdoor smoke-protected assembly seating. The clear width in inches (mm) of aisles and other means of egress shall be not less than the total occupant load served by the egress element multiplied by 0.08 (2.0 mm) where egress is by aisles and stairs and multiplied by 0.06 (1.52 mm) where egress is by ramps, corridors, tunnels or vomitories.

Exception: The clear width in inches (mm) of aisles and other means of egress shall be permitted to comply with Section 1028.6.2 for the number of seats in the outdoor smoke-protected assembly seating where Section 1028.6.2 permits less width.

1028.6.4 Public address system. See Section 907.2.1.3.

[B] 1028.7 Travel distance. Exits and aisles shall be so located that the travel distance to an exit door shall not be greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm) measured along the line of travel in nonsprinklered buildings. Travel distance shall not be more than 250 feet (76 200 mm) in sprinklered buildings. Where aisles are provided for seating, the distance shall be measured along the aisles and aisle accessway without travel over or on the seats.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke-protected assembly seating: The travel distance from each seat to the nearest entrance to a vomitory or concourse shall not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm). The travel distance from the entrance to the vomitory or concourse to a stair, ramp or walk on the exterior of the building shall not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm).
2. Open-air seating: The travel distance from each seat to the building exterior shall not exceed 400 feet (122 m). The travel distance shall not be limited in facilities of Type I or II construction.

[B] 1028.8 Common path of egress travel. The common path of egress travel shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) from any seat to a point where an occupant has a choice of two paths of egress travel to two exits.

Exceptions:

1. For areas serving less than 50 occupants, the common path of egress travel shall not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm).
2. For smoke-protected assembly seating, the common path of egress travel shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).

[B] 1028.8.1 Path through adjacent row. Where one of the two paths of travel is across the aisle through a row of seats to another aisle, there shall be not more than 24 seats between the two aisles, and the minimum clear width between rows for the row between the two aisles shall be 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.6 inch (15.2 mm) for each additional seat above seven in the row between aisles.

Exception: For smoke-protected assembly seating there shall not be more than 40 seats between the two aisles and the minimum clear width shall be 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) for each additional seat.

[B] 1028.9 Assembly aisles are required. Every occupied portion of any building, room or space used for assembly purposes that contains seats, tables, displays, similar fixtures or equipment shall be provided with aisles leading to exits or exit access doorways in accordance with this section. Aisle accessways for tables and seating shall comply with Section 1028.10.1.

2. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof with seating at tables and without ramped or tiered floors for seating, the seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.
3. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof without ramped or tiered floors for seating and with greater than 200 seats, the seats shall be fastened together in groups of not less than three or the seats shall be securely fastened to the floor.
4. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes where flexibility of the seating arrangement is an integral part of the design and function of the space and seating is on tiered levels, a maximum of 200 seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor. Plans showing seating, tiers and aisles shall be submitted for approval.
5. Groups of seats within a building, room or space used for assembly purposes separated from other seating by railings, guards, partial height walls or similar barriers with level floors and having no more than 14 seats per group shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.
6. Seats intended for musicians or other performers and separated by railings, guards, partial height walls or similar barriers shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §3.06(a)] Bonding of Chairs and Spacing of Tables.

(a) Bonding of chairs. In every Group A and Group E occupancy, all loose seats, folding chairs or similar seating facilities that are not fixed to the floor shall be bonded together in groups of not less than three.

Exceptions:

(1) When not more than 200 such seats, chairs or facilities are provided, bonding thereof may be deleted.

(2) The bonding of chairs shall not be required when tables are provided as when the occupancy is used for dining or similar purposes.

(3) Upon approval of the enforcing agency, the bonding of chairs shall not be required when the placement and location of such chairs do not obstruct any required exit or any line of egress toward required exits and do not constitute a fire hazard as defined in California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Section 3.14.

[B] 1028.13 Handrails. Ramped aisles having a slope exceeding one unit vertical in 15 units horizontal (6.7-percent slope) and aisle stairs shall be provided with handrails in compliance with Section 1012 located either at one or both sides of the aisle or within the aisle width.

Exceptions:

1. Handrails are not required for ramped aisles having a gradient no greater than one unit vertical in eight units horizontal (12.5-percent slope) and seating on both sides.
2. Handrails are not required if, at the side of the aisle, there is a guard that complies with the graspability requirements of handrails.
3. Handrail extensions are not required at the top and bottom of aisle stair and aisle ramp runs to permit crossovers within the aisles.

[B] 1028.13.1 Discontinuous handrails. Where there is seating on both sides of the aisle, the handrails shall be discontinuous with gaps or breaks at intervals not exceeding five rows to facilitate access to seating and to permit crossing from one side of the aisle to the other. These gaps or breaks shall have a clear width of at least 22 inches (559 mm) and not greater than 36 inches (914 mm), measured horizontally, and the handrail shall have rounded terminations or bends.

[B] 1028.13.2 Intermediate handrails. Where handrails are provided in the middle of aisle stairs, there shall be an additional intermediate handrail located approximately 12 inches (305 mm) below the main handrail.

[B] 1028.14 Assembly guards. Guards adjacent to seating in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes shall comply with Sections 1028.14.1 through 1028.14.3.

[B] 1028.14.1 Cross aisles. Cross aisles located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below shall have guards in accordance with Section 1013.

Where an elevation change of 30 inches (762 mm) or less occurs between a cross aisle and the adjacent floor or grade below, guards not less than 26 inches (660 mm) above the aisle floor shall be provided.

Exception: Where the backs of seats on the front of the cross aisle project 24 inches (610 mm) or more above the adjacent floor of the aisle, a guard need not be provided.

[B] 1028.14.2 Sightline-constrained guard heights. Unless subject to the requirements of Section 1028.14.3, a fascia or railing system in accordance with the guard requirements of Section 1013 and having a minimum height of 26 inches (660 mm) shall be provided where the floor or footboard elevation is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below and the fascia or railing would otherwise interfere with the sightlines of immediately adjacent seating. At bleachers, a guard must be provided where required by ICC 300.

Exception: The height of the guard in front of seating shall be measured from the adjacent walking surface.

[B] 1028.14.3 Guards at the end of aisles. A fascia or railing system complying with the guard requirements of Section 1013 shall be provided for the full width of the aisle where the foot of the aisle is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below. The fascia or railing shall be a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) high and shall provide a minimum 42 inches (1067 mm) measured diagonally between the top of the rail and the nosing of the nearest tread.

SECTION 1029
EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE

[B] 1029.1 General. In addition to the means of egress required by this chapter, provisions shall be made for emergency escape and rescue openings in Group R occupancies. Basements and sleeping rooms below the fourth story above grade plane shall have at least one exterior emergency escape and rescue opening in accordance with this section. Where basements contain one or more sleeping rooms, emergency escape and rescue openings shall be required in each sleeping room, but shall not be required in adjoining areas of the basement. Such openings shall open directly into a public way or to a yard or court that opens to a public way.

Exceptions:

1. *In Groups R-1 and R-2 occupancies constructed of Type I, Type IIA, Type IIIA or Type IV construction equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.*
2. Basements with a ceiling height of less than 80 inches (2032 mm) shall not be required to have emergency escape and rescue openings.
3. Emergency escape and rescue openings are not required from basements or sleeping rooms that have an exit door or exit access door that opens directly into a public way or to a yard, court or exterior exit balcony that opens to a public way.
4. Basements without habitable spaces and having no more than 200 square feet (18.6 m^2) in floor area shall not be required to have emergency escape and rescure openings.

[B] 1029.2 Minimum size. Emergency escape and rescue openings shall have a minimum net clear opening of 5.7 square feet (0.53 m^2).

Exception: The minimum net clear opening for grade-floor emergency escape and rescue openings shall be 5 square feet (0.46 m^2).

[B] 1029.2.1 Minimum dimensions. The minimum net clear opening height dimension shall be 24 inches (610 mm). The minimum net clear opening width dimension shall be 20 inches (508 mm). The net clear opening dimensions shall be the result of normal operation of the opening.

[B] 1029.3 Maximum height from floor. Emergency escape and rescue openings shall have the bottom of the clear opening not greater than 44 inches (1118 mm) measured from the floor.

[B] 1029.4 Operational constraints. Emergency escape and rescue openings *and any exit doors* shall be *maintained free of any obstructions other than those allowed by this section and shall be* operational from the inside of the room. Bars, grilles, grates or similar devices are permitted to be placed over emergency escape and rescue openings provided the minimum net clear opening size complies with Section 1029.2 and such devices shall be releasable or removable from the inside without the use of a key, tool, *special knowledge or effort,* or force greater than that which is required for normal operation of the escape and rescue opening. Where such bars, grilles, grates or similar devices are installed, smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Sections 907.2.11 regardless of the valuation of the alteration. *The release mechanism shall be maintained operable at all times.*

Such bars, grills, grates or any similar devices shall be equipped with an approved exterior release device for use by the fire department only when required by the authority having jurisdiction.

Where security bars (burglar bars) are installed on emergency egress and rescue windows or doors, on or after July 1, 2000, such devices shall comply with California Building Standards Code, Part 12, Chapter 12-3 and other applicable provisions of Part 2.

Exception: *Group R-1 occupancies provided with a monitored fire sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8 and designed in accordance with NFPA 13 may have openable windows permanently restricted to a maximum 4-inch (102 mm) open position.*

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §4.2] Labeling.

Burglar bars shall not be sold in California at wholesale or retail unless warning information as specified in California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Section 4.3 is provided either on the packaging or provided inside the packaging along with the burglar bars.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §4.3(a) through (c)] Warning Information.

(a) Warning information located on or in burglar bar packaging shall contain the following information:

(1) Warning that the burglar bars are intended to deter or delay intruders, they are not intended to prevent entry.

(2) A reprint of the following requirements from California Building Code, Part 2, Chapter 10:

> *"Bars, grilles, grates or similar devices may be installed on emergency escape or rescue windows, doors or window wells, or any required exit door, provided:*
>
> 1. *The devices are equipped with approved release mechanisms which are openable from the inside without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort; and*
> 2. *The building is equipped with smoke alarms installed in accordance with California Building Code, Part 2, Section 907.*
>
> *Such bars, grilles, grates or similar devices shall be equipped with an approved release device for use by the fire department only on the exterior side for the purpose of fire department emergency access, when required by the authority having jurisdiction."*

(3) A statement regarding the necessity of installing early warning smoke alarms (as required by the California Building Code, Part 2, Section 907) and planning occupant's escape routes and meeting places.

(4) Contact the local building and fire official to determine if a local ordinance requires a building permit

1103.4 Vertical openings. Interior vertical shafts, including but not limited to *stairways,* elevator hoistways, service and utility shafts, that connect two or more stories of a building, shall be enclosed or protected as specified in Sections 1103.4.1 through 1103.4.7.

1103.4.1 Group I occupancies. In Group I occupancies, interior vertical openings connecting two or more stories shall be protected with 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

1103.4.2 Three to five stories. In other than Group I occupancies, interior vertical openings connecting three to five stories shall be protected by either 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or an automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout the building in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

Exceptions:

1. Vertical opening protection is not required for Group R-3 occupancies.
2. Vertical opening protection is not required for open parking garages and ramps.
3. Vertical opening protection for escalators shall be in accordance with Section 1103.4.5, 1103.4.6 or 1103.4.7.

1103.4.3 More than five stories. In other than Group I occupancies, interior vertical openings connecting more than five stories shall be protected by 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

Exceptions:

1. Vertical opening protection is not required for Group R-3 occupancies.
2. Vertical opening protection is not required for open parking garages and ramps.
3. Vertical opening protection for escalators shall be in accordance with Section 1103.4.5, 1103.4.6 or 1103.4.7.

1103.4.4 Atriums and covered malls. In other than Group I occupancies, interior vertical openings in a covered mall building or a building with an atrium shall be protected by either 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or an automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout the building in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

Exceptions:

1. Vertical opening protection is not required for Group R-3 occupancies.
2. Vertical opening protection is not required for open parking garages and ramps.

1103.4.5 Escalators in Group B and M occupancies. Escalators creating vertical openings connecting any number of stories shall be protected by either 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 installed throughout the building, with a draft curtain and closely spaced sprinklers around the escalator opening.

1103.4.6 Escalators connecting four or fewer stories. In other than Group B and M occupancies, escalators creating vertical openings connecting four or fewer stories shall be protected by either 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 shall be installed throughout the building, and a draft curtain with closely spaced sprinklers shall be installed around the escalator opening.

1103.4.7 Escalators connecting more than four stories. In other than Group B and M occupancies, escalators creating vertical openings connecting five or more stories shall be protected by 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

1103.5 Sprinkler systems. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in existing buildings in accordance with Sections 1103.5.1 and 1103.5.2.

1103.5.1 Pyroxylin plastics. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout existing buildings where cellulose nitrate film or pyroxylin plastics are manufactured, stored or handled in quantities exceeding 100 pounds (45 kg). Vaults located within buildings for the storage of raw pyroxylin shall be protected with an approved automatic sprinkler system capable of discharging 1.66 gallons per minute per square foot (68 L/min/m^2) over the area of the vault.

1103.5.2 Group I-2. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout existing Group I-2 fire areas. The sprinkler system shall be provided throughout the floor where the Group I-2 occupancy is located, and in all floors between the Group I-2 occupancy and the level of exit discharge.

1103.6 Standpipes. Existing structures shall be equipped with standpipes installed in accordance with Section 905 where required in Sections 1103.6.1 and 1103.6.2. The fire code official is authorized to approve the installation of manual standpipe systems to achieve compliance with this section where the responding fire department is capable of providing the required hose flow at the highest standpipe outlet.

1103.6.1 Existing multiple-story buildings. Existing buildings with occupied floors located more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) above the lowest level of fire department access or more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) below the highest level of fire department access shall be equipped with standpipes.

1103.6.2 Existing helistops and heliports. Existing buildings with a rooftop helistop or heliport located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) above the lowest level of fire department access to the roof level on which the helistop or heliport is located shall be equipped with standpipes in accordance with Section 2007.5.

1103.7 Fire alarm systems. An approved fire alarm system shall be installed in existing buildings and structures in accordance with Sections 1103.7.1 through 1103.7.7 and provide occupant notification in accordance with Section 907.5 unless other requirements are provided by other sections of this code. *Existing high-rise buildings shall comply with Section 1103.7.8.*

Exception: Occupancies with an existing, previously approved fire alarm system.

1103.7.1 Group E. A fire alarm system shall be installed in existing Group E occupancies in accordance with Section 907.2.3.

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in a building with a maximum area of 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) that contains a single classroom and is located no closer than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from another building.
2. A manual fire alarm system is not required in Group E occupancies with an occupant load less than 50.

1103.7.2 Group I-1. An automatic fire alarm system shall be installed in existing Group I-1 residential care/assisted living facilities in accordance with Section 907.2.6.1.

Exceptions:

1. Manual fire alarm boxes in resident or patient sleeping areas shall not be required at exits if located at all nurses' control stations or other constantly attended staff locations, provided such stations are visible and continuously accessible and that travel distances required in Section 907.5.2 are not exceeded.
2. Where each sleeping room has a means of egress door opening directly to an exterior egress balcony that leads directly to the exits in accordance with Section 1019, and the building is not more than three stories in height.

1103.7.3 Group I-2 ***and Group I-2.1.*** An automatic fire alarm system *that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5* shall be installed in existing Group I-2 *and Group I-2.1* occupancies in accordance with Section 907.2.6.2.

Exception: Manual fire alarm boxes in resident or patient sleeping areas shall not be required at exits if located at all nurses' control stations or other constantly attended staff locations, provided such stations are visible and continuously accessible and that travel distances required in Section 907.4.2.1 are not exceeded.

1103.7.3.1 Additional provisions for existing Group I occupancies: *In projects requiring the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development approval in existing Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies located in buildings defined as hospitals in Section 1250 of the Health and Safety Code, facilities not equipped with an automatic sprinkler system throughout shall be equipped with an automatic fire alarm system which responds to the products of combustion other than heat.*

Exception: *Heat detectors may be used in closets, unusable spaces under floor areas, storage rooms, bathrooms, and rooms of similar use.*

1103.7.4 Group I-3. An automatic and manual fire alarm system shall be installed in existing Group I-3 occupancies in accordance with Section 907.2.6.3.

1103.7.5 Group R-1. A fire alarm system and smoke alarms shall be installed in existing Group R-1 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1103.7.5.1 through 1103.7.5.2.1.

1103.7.5.1 Group R-1 hotel and motel manual fire alarm system. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in existing Group R-1 hotels and motels more than three stories or with more than 20 sleeping units.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings less than two stories in height where all sleeping units, attics and crawl spaces are separated by 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction and each sleeping unit has direct access to a public way, egress court or yard.
2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required throughout the building when the following conditions are met:
   - 2.1. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2;
   - 2.2. The notification appliances will activate upon sprinkler water flow; and
   - 2.3. At least one manual fire alarm box is installed at an approved location.

1103.7.5.1.1 Group R-1 hotel and motel automatic smoke detection system. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in existing Group R-1 hotels and motels throughout all interior corridors serving sleeping rooms not equipped with an approved, supervised sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.

Exception: An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving sleeping units and where each sleeping unit has a means of egress door opening directly to an exit or to an exterior exit access that leads directly to an exit.

1103.7.5.2 Group R-1 boarding and rooming houses manual fire alarm system. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in existing Group R-1 boarding and rooming houses.

Exception: Buildings less than two stories in height where all sleeping units, attics and crawl spaces are separated by 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction and each sleeping unit has direct access to a public way, egress court or yard.

1103.7.5.2.1 Group R-1 boarding and rooming houses automatic smoke detection system. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in existing Group R-1 boarding and rooming houses throughout all interior corridors serving sleeping units not equipped with an approved, supervised sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.

Exception: Buildings equipped with single-station smoke alarms meeting or exceeding the requirements of Section 907.2.11.1 and where the fire alarm system includes at least one manual fire alarm box per floor arranged to initiate the alarm.

1103.7.6 Group R-2. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in existing Group R-2 occupancies more than three stories in height or with more than 16 dwelling or sleeping units.

Exceptions:

1. Where each living unit is separated from other contiguous living units by fire barriers having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 0.75 hour, and where each living unit has either its own independent exit or its own independent stairway or ramp discharging at grade.
2. A separate fire alarm system is not required in buildings that are equipped throughout with an approved supervised automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and having a local alarm to notify all occupants.
3. A fire alarm system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving dwelling units and are protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, provided that dwelling units either have a means of egress door opening directly to an exterior exit access that leads directly to the exits or are served by open-ended corridors designed in accordance with Section 1026.6, Exception 4.

1103.7.7 Group R-4. A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in existing Group R-4 residential care/assisted living facilities in accordance with Section 907.2.10.1.

Exceptions:

1. Where there are interconnected smoke alarms meeting the requirements of Section 907.2.11 and there is at least one manual fire alarm box per floor arranged to continuously sound the smoke alarms.
2. Other manually activated, continuously sounding alarms approved by the fire code official.

1103.7.8 Existing Group R-1 and Group R-2 High-rise buildings. *Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 3414.23 of the California Building Code, every existing high-rise building used for the housing of a Group R-1 or Group R-2 occupancy shall have installed therein a fire alarm system conforming to this subsection.*

1103.7.8.1 General. *Every apartment house and every hotel shall have installed therein an automatic or manually operated fire alarm system. Such fire alarm systems shall be so designed that all occupants of the building may be warned simultaneously.*

1103.7.8.2 Installation. *The installation of all fire alarm equipment shall be in accordance with this code.*

1103.7.9 Existing High-rise Buildings.

1103.7.9.1 Fire alarm system. *Every existing high-rise building shall be provided with an approved fire alarm system. In department stores, retail sales stores and similar occupancies where the general public is admitted, such systems shall be of a type capable of alerting staff and employees. In office buildings and all other high-rise buildings, such systems shall be of a type capable of alerting all occupants simultaneously.*

Exceptions:

1. *In areas of public assemblage, the type and location of audible appliances shall be as determined by the enforcing agency.*
2. *When acceptable to the enforcing agency, the occupant voice notification system required by California Building Code, Section 3414.20 may be used in lieu of the fire alarm system.*

1103.7.9.2 Existing systems. *Existing fire alarm systems, when acceptable to the enforcing agency, shall be deemed as conforming to the provisions of these regulations.*

1103.7.9.3 Annunciation. *When a new fire alarm system is installed, it shall be connected to an annunciator panel installed in a location approved by the enforcing agency.*

For purposes of annunciation, zoning shall be in accordance with Section 907.6.3.4.

1103.7.9.4 Monitoring. *Monitoring shall be in accordance with Section 907.6.5.*

1103.7.9.5 Systems interconnection. *When an automatic fire detection system or automatic extinguishing system is installed, activation of such system shall cause the sounding of the fire alarm notification appliances at locations designated by the enforcing agency.*

1103.7.9.6 Manual fire alarm boxes. *A manual fire alarm box shall be provided in the locations designated by the enforcing agency. Such locations shall be where boxes are readily accessible and visible and in normal paths of daily travel by occupants of the building.*

1103.7.9.7 Emergency voice/alarm communication system. *Such system shall provide communication from* *a location available to and designated by the enforcing agency to not less than all public areas.*

The emergency voice/alarm communication system may be combined with a fire alarm system provide the combined system has been approved and listed by the State Fire Marshal. The sounding of a fire alarm signal in any given area or floor shall not prohibit voice communication to other areas of floors. Combination systems shall be designed to permit voice transmission to override the fire alarm signal, but the fire alarm signal shall not terminate in less than three minutes.

1103.7.9.8 Fire department system. *When it is determined by test that portable fire department communication equipment is ineffective, a communication system acceptable to the enforcing agency shall be installed within the building to permit emergency communication between fire-suppression personnel.*

1103.7.9.9 Smoke control systems. *Existing air-circulation systems shall be provided with an override switch in a location approved by the enforcing agency which will allow for the manual control of shutdown of the systems.*

Exception: *Systems which serve only a single floor, or portion thereof, without any penetration by ducts or other means into adjacent floors.*

1103.7.9.10 Elevator recall smoke detection. *Smoke detection for emergency operation of elevators shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.3.3.*

1103.8 Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in existing Group I-1 and R occupancies in accordance with Sections 1103.8.1 through 1103.8.3.

1103.8.1 Where required. Existing Group I-1 and R occupancies shall be provided with single-station smoke alarms in accordance with Section 907.2.11, except as provided in Sections 1103.8.2 and 1103.8.3.

Exceptions:

1. Where the code that was in effect at the time of construction required smoke alarms and smoke alarms complying with those requirements are already provided.
2. Where smoke alarms have been installed in occupancies and dwellings that were not required to have them at the time of construction, additional smoke alarms shall not be required provided that the existing smoke alarms comply with requirements that were in effect at the time of installation.
3. Where smoke detectors connected to a fire alarm system have been installed as a substitute for smoke alarms.

1103.8.2 Interconnection. Where more than one smoke alarm is required to be installed within an individual dwelling or sleeping unit, the smoke alarms shall be interconnected in such a manner that the activation of one alarm will activate all of the alarms in the individual unit. Physical interconnection of smoke alarms shall not be required where listed wireless alarms are installed and all alarms sound upon activation of one alarm. The alarm shall be clearly audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed.

Exceptions:

1. Interconnection is not required in buildings that are not undergoing alterations, repairs or construction of any kind.
2. Smoke alarms in existing areas are not required to be interconnected where alterations or repairs do not result in the removal of interior wall or ceiling finishes exposing the structure, unless there is an attic, crawl space or basement available which could provide access for interconnection without the removal of interior finishes.
3. *Smoke alarms are not required to be interconnected where repairs or alterations are limited to the exterior surfaces of dwellings, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, or the addition or replacement of windows or doors, or the addition of a porch or deck.*
4. *Smoke alarms are not required to be interconnected when work is limited to the installation, alteration or repairs of plumbing or mechanical systems or the installation, alteration or repair of electrical systems which do not result in the removal of interior wall or ceiling finishes exposing the structure.*

1103.8.3 Power source. Single-station smoke alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring provided that such wiring is served from a commercial source and shall be equipped with a battery backup. Smoke alarms with integral strobes that are not equipped with battery backup shall be connected to an emergency electrical system. Smoke alarms shall emit a signal when the batteries are low. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than as required for overcurrent protection.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke alarms are permitted to be solely battery operated in existing buildings where no construction is taking place.
2. Smoke alarms are permitted to be solely battery operated in buildings that are not served from a commercial power source.
3. Smoke alarms are permitted to be solely battery operated in existing areas of buildings undergoing alterations or repairs that do not result in the removal of interior walls or ceiling finishes exposing the structure, unless there is an attic, crawl space or basement available which could provide access for building wiring without the removal of interior finishes.
4. *Smoke alarms are permitted to be solely battery operated where repairs or alterations are limited*

CALIFORNIA FIRE CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 48 – *MOTION PICTURE AND TELEVISION PRODUCTION STUDIO SOUND STAGES, APPROVED PRODUCTION FACILITIES AND PRODUCTION LOCATIONS*

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	SFM		HCD			DSA		OSHPD				BSCC	DHS	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
		T-24	T-19*	1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	1	2	3	4								
Adopt Entire Chapter		X																		
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																				
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																				
[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1]																				
Chapter / Section																				

* The *California Code of Regulations* (CCR), Title 19, Division 1 provisions that are found in the *California Fire Code* are a reprint from the current CCR, Title 19, Division 1 text for the code user's convenience only. The scope, applicability and appeals procedures of CCR, Title 19, Division I remain the same.

CHAPTER 48

MOTION PICTURE AND TELEVISION PRODUCTION STUDIO SOUND STAGES, APPROVED PRODUCTION FACILITIES AND PRODUCTION LOCATIONS

SECTION 4801
GENERAL

4801.1 Scope. *Production studios, sound stages, approved production facilities and production locations used by the entertainment industry for the purpose of motion picture, television and commercial production shall be in accordance with the provisions of this article.*

4801.2 Purpose. *The purpose of this article is to establish minimum requirements that will provide a reasonable degree of safety from fire, panic and explosion. Buildings and structures defined herein shall be in accordance with this article.*

4801.3 DEFINITIONS.

APPROVED FIRE WATCH. *Individuals provided with at least one approved means for notification of the fire department and their only duty shall be to perform constant patrols of the protected premises and keep watch for fires.*

APPROVED PRODUCTION FACILITY. *An existing building, or portion of a building, or a group of buildings altered for use by the entertainment industry for the purpose of motion picture, television and commercial production.*

PLATFORM. *Part of a set, which is a floor or horizontal surface raised above stage floor level.*

PRODUCTION LOCATION. *Any area or facility outside a production studio, approved production facility or sound stage used by the entertainment industry for the purpose of motion picture, television and commercial production.*

PRODUCTION STUDIO. *A building, portion of a building, or a group of buildings designed and constructed for use by the entertainment industry for the purpose of motion picture, television and commercial production.*

SET. *A structure built or assembled for the purpose of motion picture, television and commercial production.*

SOUND STAGE. *A building or portion of a building usually insulated from outside noise and natural light for use by the entertainment industry for the purpose of motion picture, television and commercial production.*

SECTION 4802
OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION

4802.1 Live audience stages. *Production facilities, sound stages and approved production studios with live audience stages shall be classified as Group A-1 occupancy in accordance with the California Building Code.*

4802.2 All other stages. *Production studios, sound stages and approved production facilities without live audience stages shall be classified as Group F-1 occupancy in accordance with the California Building Code.*

> ***Note:*** *Sections 4803 through 4810 apply only to studio sound stages and approved production facilities.*

SECTION 4803
REQUIRED PERMITS

4803.1 Change in use. *A permit from the fire code official shall be obtained any time a change in use or occupancy is intended by the owner (e.g., for live audience shows, wrap parties).*

__4803.2 Additional permits.__ A permit shall be required for:

a) Use of pyrotechnic special effects.

b) Open flames.

c) Flammable or combustible liquids, gases and dust.

d) Hot work.

e) Presence of motor vehicles within a building.

f) Any additional permits as required by the fire code official.

__4803.3 Live audiences.__ A permit shall be required for seating arrangements of all live audience stages.

SECTION 4804
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

__4804.1 Housekeeping.__ Provisions of this part shall maintain proper housekeeping in accordance with Chapter 3.

__4804.2 Aisles.__ Perimeter aisles within the sound stage and approved production facility shall be provided. Aisles required by this section shall have a minimum width of 4 feet (1219 mm). See Chapter 10 for maintenance requirements. Aisles required by this section shall have a minimum clear unobstructed height of 7 feet (2134 mm).

__4804.3 Travel distance.__ The maximum travel distance to any exit within the sound stage and approved production facility shall be 150 feet (45 720 mm).

__4804.4 Exit doors.__ Exit doors shall be equipped with panic hardware and swing in the direction of exit travel.

__4804.5 Exit signs.__ Illuminated exit signs shall be installed in accordance with the California Building Code.

__4804.6 Exit illumination.__ Exit illumination shall be provided in accordance with the California Building Code. In the event of power failure, exit path illumination shall be automatically provided by an approved emergency back-up system.

__4804.7 Exit obstructions.__ All means of egress shall be maintained in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 10, Section 1005.1.

__4804.8 Foam plastics.__ All foam plastics shall meet the requirements of Chapter 8, Sections 807.4.2.4 and 807.4.5.

__4804.9 Decorative materials.__ Drapes, drops, cut greens, etc., shall meet the flame retardant requirements of California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapters 5 and 8, Sections 807.4.2.4 and 807.4.5.

SECTION 4805
FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

__4805.1 Existing sound stages and approved production facilities.__ All existing sound stages and approved production facilities equipped with an automatic fire sprinkler system shall be maintained in accordance with the provisions in Chapter 9.

__4805.2 New sound stages.__ All new sound stages shall be equipped with an approved automatic fire sprinkler system. The system shall be installed in accordance with the provisions in Chapter 9 and shall meet the minimum design requirements of an Extra Hazard, Group 2 system.

__4805.3 Solid-ceiling sets and platforms.__ All interior solid-ceiling sets over 600 square feet (55.7 m^2) in area, and platforms (when provided) over 600 square feet (55.7 m^2) in area and which exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in height shall be protected by one of the following:

1. *An approved and listed heat detector system. Heat detectors shall be spaced 30 feet (9144 mm) on center or as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions. Detectors shall be connected to an approved and listed central, proprietary or remote station service or a local alarm, which will give an audible signal at a constantly attended location. Such system shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 9.*
2. *The ceiling shall be positioned to allow for the operation of the building's automatic fire sprinkler system after rehearsal, videotaping, filming, or broadcasting of programs has been completed for the day.*
3. *An approved fire watch.*
4. *Special hazards shall be reviewed by the fire code official (see Additional Fire Protection Systems, Section 901.4.3).*

SECTION 4806
FIRE DETECTION EQUIPMENT

__4806.1 Fire alarm control units.__ Fire alarm control units shall be California State Fire Marshal listed and shall be utilized in accordance with their listing. Control units may be temporarily supported by sets, platforms or pedestals.

__4806.2 Heat detectors.__ Heat detection required by this article shall be defined as a portable system as it is intended to be reinstalled when platforms or sets are changed.

Heat detectors may be secured to standard outlet boxes which may be temporarily supported by sets, platforms or pedestals.

Heat detectors shall be provided for solid-ceiling sets and platforms where required by Sections 4805.3 and 4811.14.

SECTION 4807
FIRE SAFETY OFFICERS

__4807.1__ Where permits are required by the Fire Code, a requirement for standby fire safety officers shall be determined by the fire code official on a case-by-case basis. Standby fire safety officers shall not be required when the provisions of this article are met.

SECTION 4808
ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

__4808.1 General.__ All electrical equipment including lighting, cabling and temporary power, such as portable generators, shall be maintained in good working order and shall comply with the provisions of the California Electrical Code.

4808.2 Lighting and power requirements. *A studio sound stage and approved production facility shall be provided with a minimum of 35 watts per square foot of permanently installed power dedicated for the distribution of production lighting and power. Mobile generators may be utilized for auxiliary power.*

4808.3 Distribution. *Distribution equipment shall be designed for sound stage use. The wiring to such equipment shall be considered permanent and shall comply with applicable provisions of the California Electrical Code. Temporary feeders shall not be tapped from panelboards and switchboards where deadfront covers have to be removed.*

4808.4 Installations. *Permanent or temporary electrical installations shall be installed in accordance with the California Electrical Code and this code. Such equipment shall not obstruct exits, means of egress or fire department access, unless approved by the fire code official.*

4808.5 Generators. *Portable, mobile or stationary power-generating equipment may be used to supplement building electrical power for temporary use. Equipment shall be located at a pre-designated location, as approved by the fire code official.*

Temporary auxiliary power cables supplied from mobile generators or adjacent buildings may pass through exterior walls and interior fire-resistive assemblies provided an approved through-penetration fire-stop system is utilized for protection of the opening.

SECTION 4809
MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

4809.1 Existing equipment. *All mechanical equipment used as part of the building ventilation system shall be maintained in good working order and shall comply with the provisions of the California Mechanical Code.*

4809.2 Auxiliary equipment. *All auxiliary heating, ventilation and air-conditioning equipment shall be approved and listed for the intended use. Flexible duct, if utilized, shall be noncombustible. Such auxiliary equipment shall not obstruct exits, means of egress or fire department access.*

SECTION 4810
DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

4810.1 General. *The fire code official shall be provided with certification that approved production facilities and studio sound stages will sustain the anticipated loads of sets, props or other temporary modifications.*

Where the anticipated loads exceed the design criteria for an approved production facility and studio sound stage, the building or portions thereof shall be modified for the additional loads.

SECTION 4811
PRODUCTION LOCATIONS

4811.1 General. *This chapter shall apply to production locations.*

4811.2 Permits. *A permit shall be obtained, unless waived by the fire code official for any of the activities that follow:*

a) Use of pyrotechnic special effects, see Section 3307.1 and California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 6.

b) Open flames.

c) Flammable or combustible liquids, gases and dust.

d) Hot work.

e) Presence of motor vehicles within a building.

f) Tents and canopies, see Chapter 31.

g) Any additional permits as required by the agency having jurisdiction (AHJ).

4811.3 Pyrotechnic special effects and open flames. *The use of pyrotechnic special effects and open flames shall be subject to the approval of the fire code official.*

4811.4 Standby fire personnel. *A requirement for standby fire safety officers shall be determined by the fire code official on a case-by-case basis.*

4811.5 Foamed plastic materials. *All foam plastics shall meet the requirements of Chapter 8, Sections 807.4.2.4 and 807.4.5.*

4811.6 Smoking. *When the fire code official determines that hazardous conditions necessitate controlled use of smoking materials, smoking may be prohibited or limited to designated smoking areas.*

4811.7 Structural loads. *Sets, scenery and other equipment shall not impact the structural integrity of a building or structure. Consultation with a building official or structural engineer may be required.*

4811.8 Electrical requirements.

4811.8.1 General. *All electrical equipment including lighting, cabling and temporary power, such as portable generators, shall be maintained in good working order and shall comply with the provisions of the California Electrical Code.*

4811.8.2 Distribution. *Temporary feeders shall not be tapped from panelboards and switchboards where deadfront covers have to be removed.*

4811.8.3 Installations. *Electrical installations shall be installed in accordance with the California Electrical Code. Such equipment shall not obstruct exits, means of egress or fire department access, unless approved by the fire code official.*

4811.8.4 Generators. *Portable, mobile or stationary power-generating equipment may be used to supplement building electrical power for temporary use. Equipment shall be placed in a location acceptable to the fire code official.*

4811.9 Fire department access. *Required emergency vehicle access shall be maintained. Any deviations are subject to approval by the fire code official.*

4811.10 Means of egress. *The production location shall be provided with means of egress appropriate for the intended use as approved by the fire code official.*

4811.11 Fire protection systems and equipment. *Functional fire protection systems and equipment shall be maintained in an operable condition, unless approved by the fire code official. Disconnecting or altering of fire protection systems and/or equipment shall be prohibited, unless otherwise approved by the fire code official with alternate means of protection provided.*

4811.12 Fire hydrants and fire appliances. *Hydrants, standpipes and fire department connections (FDC) shall not be obstructed, blocked or rendered inoperable in accordance with Chapter 9, unless approved by the fire code official.*

4811.13 Fire extinguishers. *Approved fire extinguishers shall be provided as required by the fire code official.*

4811.14 Solid-ceiling sets and platforms. *In buildings with existing fire protection systems and where production intends to construct solid-ceiling sets over 600 square feet (55.7 m^2) in area, and platforms over 600 square feet (55.7 m^2) in area and which exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in height, such buildings shall be protected by one of the following:*

1. *An approved and listed heat detector system. Heat detectors shall be spaced 30 feet (9144 mm) on center or as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions. Detectors shall be connected to an approved and listed central, proprietary or remote station service or a local alarm, which will give an audible signal at a constantly attended location. Such system shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 9.*
2. *The ceiling shall be positioned to allow for the operation of the building's automatic fire sprinkler system after rehearsal, videotaping, filming, or broadcasting of programs has been completed for the day.*
3. *An approved fire watch.*
4. *Special hazards shall be reviewed by the enforcing agency (see additional fire protection systems, Section 901.4.3).*

4811.15 Buildings without fire protection systems. *Special hazards shall be reviewed by the fire code official (see special hazards Section 901.4.4).*

CALIFORNIA FIRE CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 53 – COMBUSTIBLE GASES

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user. See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	SFM		HCD			DSA		OSHPD				BSCC	DHS	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
		T-24	T-19*	1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	1	2	3	4								
Adopt Entire Chapter																				
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)		X																		
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																				
[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1]			X																	
Chapter / Section																				
[T-19 §3.18 (a)(b)]			X																	
5301.1		X																		
5305.7		X																		

* The *California Code of Regulations* (CCR), Title 19, Division 1 provisions that are found in the *California Fire Code* are a reprint from the current CCR, Title 19, Division 1 text for the code user's convenience only. The scope, applicability and appeals procedures of CCR, Title 19, Division I remain the same.

CHAPTER 53

COMPRESSED GASES

SECTION 5301
GENERAL

5301.1 Scope. Storage, use and handling of compressed gases in compressed gas containers, cylinders, tanks and systems shall comply with this chapter, including those gases regulated elsewhere in this code. Partially full compressed gas containers, cylinders or tanks containing residual gases shall be considered as full for the purposes of the controls required.

Exceptions:

1. Gases used as refrigerants in refrigeration systems (see Section 606).
2. Compressed natural gas (CNG) for use as a vehicular fuel shall comply with Chapter 23, NFPA 52 and the *California Mechanical Code*.

Compressed hydrogen (CH_2) for use as a vehicular fuel shall also comply with Chapters 23 and 58 of this code, the California Mechanical Code and NFPA 2.

Cutting and welding gases shall also comply with Chapter 35.

Cryogenic fluids shall comply with Chapter 55. Liquefied natural gas for use as a vehicular fuel shall also comply with NFPA 52 and NFPA 59A.

Compressed gases classified as hazardous materials shall also comply with Chapter 50 for general requirements and chapters addressing specific hazards, including Chapters 58 (Flammable Gases), 60 (Highly Toxic and Toxic Materials), 63 (Oxidizers, Oxidizing Gases and Oxidizing Cryogenic Fluids) and 64 (Pyrophoric Materials).

LP-gas shall also comply with Chapter 61 and the *California Mechanical Code*.

[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §3.18(a) and (b)] Hazardous Areas.

(a) General. Occupancies or portions thereof used or intended to be used as operating rooms, surgeries, delivery rooms, storage rooms and similar hazardous locations in which flammable or nonflammable mixtures of gases are used or stored shall be maintained in accordance with the provisions of NFPA 99-2005 Inhalation Anesthetics, NFPA 99-2005 Laboratories, NFPA 99-2005 Hyperbaric Facilities, NFPA 55-2010 Bulk Oxygen Systems at Consumer Sites, and this section.

(b) Containers. Cylinders and fittings for compressed gases shall conform to the regulations of the Federal Department of Transportation.

Compressed gas cylinders shall be clearly marked with the name of the gas contained therein. Cylinders shall bear color makings and labels conforming to the following:

Gas	***Color***
(1) Oxygen	*Green*
(2) Carbon Dioxide	*Gray*
(3) Nitrous Oxide	*Light Blue*
(4) Cyclopropan	*Orange*
(5) Helium	*Brown*
(6) Ethlene	*Red*
(7) Carbon Dioxide and Oxygen	*Gray and Green*
(8) Helium and Oxygen	*Brown and Green*

Note: Polished metal or chrome-plated cylinders shall have color tags in addition to color labels.

When deemed necessary by the enforcing agency, compressed gas cylinders shall be secured by chains, metal straps, or other approved materials to prevent overturning.

5301.2 Permits. Permits shall be required as set forth in Section 105.6.

SECTION 5302
DEFINITIONS

5302.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

COMPRESSED GAS.

COMPRESSED GAS CONTAINER.

COMPRESSED GAS SYSTEM.

NESTING.

TUBE TRAILER.

SECTION 5303
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

5303.1 Containers, cylinders and tanks. Compressed gas containers, cylinders and tanks shall comply with this section. Compressed gas containers, cylinders or tanks that are not designed for refillable use shall not be refilled after use of the original contents.

5303.2 Design and construction. Compressed gas containers, cylinders and tanks shall be designed, fabricated, tested, marked with the specifications of manufacture and maintained in accordance with the regulations of DOTn 49 CFR Parts 100-185 or the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section VIII.

5303.3 Pressure relief devices. Pressure relief devices shall be in accordance with Sections 5303.3.1 through 5303.3.5.

5303.3.1 Where required. Pressure relief devices shall be provided to protect containers, cylinders and tanks containing compressed gases from rupture in the event of overpressure.

Exception: Cylinders, containers and tanks when exempt from the requirements for pressure relief devices specified by the standards of design listed in Section 5303.3.2.

5303.3.2 Design. Pressure relief devices to protect containers shall be designed and provided in accordance with CGA S-1.1, CGA S-1.2, CGA S-1.3 or the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section VIII, as applicable.

5303.3.3 Sizing. Pressure relief devices shall be sized in accordance with the specifications to which the container was fabricated and to material-specific requirements as applicable.

5303.3.4 Arrangement. Pressure relief devices shall be arranged to discharge upward and unobstructed to the open air in such a manner as to prevent any impingement of escaping gas upon the container, adjacent structures or personnel.

Exception: DOTn specification containers having an internal volume of 30 cubic feet (0.855 m^3) or less.

5303.3.5 Freeze protection. Pressure relief devices or vent piping shall be designed or located so that moisture cannot collect and freeze in a manner that would interfere with the operation of the device.

5303.4 Marking. Stationary and portable compressed gas containers, cylinders, tanks and systems shall be marked in accordance with Sections 5303.4.1 through 5303.4.3.

5303.4.1 Stationary compressed gas containers, cylinders and tanks. Stationary compressed gas containers, cylinders and tanks shall be marked with the name of the gas and in accordance with Sections 5003.5 and 5003.6. Markings shall be visible from any direction of approach.

5303.4.2 Portable containers, cylinders and tanks. Portable compressed gas containers, cylinders and tanks shall be marked in accordance with CGA C-7.

5303.4.3 Piping systems. Piping systems shall be marked in accordance with ASME A13.1. Markings used for piping systems shall consist of the content's name and include a direction-of-flow arrow. Markings shall be provided at each valve; at wall, floor or ceiling penetrations; at each change of direction; and at a minimum of every 20 feet (6096 mm) or fraction thereof throughout the piping run.

Exceptions:

1. Piping that is designed or intended to carry more than one gas at various times shall have appropriate signs or markings posted at the manifold, along the piping and at each point of use to provide clear identification and warning.
2. Piping within gas manufacturing plants, gas processing plants, refineries and similar occupancies shall be marked in an approved manner.

5303.5 Security. Compressed gas containers, cylinders, tanks and systems shall be secured against accidental dislodgement and against access by unauthorized personnel in accordance with Sections 5303.5.1 through 5303.5.3.

5303.5.1 Security of areas. Areas used for the storage, use and handling of compressed gas containers, cylinders, tanks and systems shall be secured against unauthorized entry and safeguarded in an approved manner.

5303.5.2 Physical protection. Compressed gas containers, cylinders, tanks and systems which could be exposed to physical damage shall be protected. Guard posts or other approved means shall be provided to protect compressed gas containers, cylinders, tanks and systems indoors and outdoors from vehicular damage and shall comply with Section 312.

5303.5.3 Securing compressed gas containers, cylinders and tanks. Compressed gas containers, cylinders and tanks shall be secured to prevent falling caused by contact, vibration or seismic activity. Securing of compressed gas containers, cylinders and tanks shall be by one of the following methods:

1. Securing containers, cylinders and tanks to a fixed object with one or more restraints.
2. Securing containers, cylinders and tanks on a cart or other mobile device designed for the movement of compressed gas containers, cylinders or tanks.

NEMA

National Electrical Manufacturer's Association
1300 N. 17th Street, Suite 1752
Rosslyn, VA 22209

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
250—2003	Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1,000 Volt Maximum)	6005.2

NFPA

National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
2—11	*Hydrogen Technologies Code*	*2309.3.1.1, 2309.3.1.2*
11—*13*	Low-, Medium- and High-expansion Foam	904.7, 5704.2.9.2.2
12—11	Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems	Table 901.6.1, 904.8, 904.11
12A—09	Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems	Table 901.6.1, 904.9
13—*13*	Installation of Sprinkler Systems as amended*	903.3.1.1, 903.3.2, 903.3.5.1.1, 903.3.5.2, 904.11, 905.3.4, 907.6.3, 1009.3, 3201.1, 3204.2, Table 3206.2, 3206.9, 3207.2, 3207.2.1, 3208.2.2, 3208.2.2.1, 3208.4, 3210.1, 3401.1, 5104.1, 5106.5.7, 5704.3.3.9, Table 5704.3.6.3(7), 5704.3.7.5.1, 5704.3.8.4

NFPA 13, Amended Sections as follows:

Revise Section 2.2 and add publications as follows:
2.2 NFPA Publications.

NFPA 25, *Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems, 2013 California* edition.

Revise Section 8.15.1.2.15 as follows:

8.15.1.2.15 Exterior columns under 10 ft^2 (0.93m^2) in total area, formed by studs or wood joist, *with no sources of ignition within the column,* supporting exterior canopies that are fully protected with a sprinkler system, shall not require sprinkler protection.

Revise Section 8.15.5.7 as follows:

***8.15.5.7** The sprinkler required at the top and bottom of the elevator hoistway by 8.15.5.6 shall not be required where permitted by Chapter 30 of the California Building Code.*

Revise Section 8.15.7.1* as follows:

8.15.7.1* Unless the requirements of 8.15.7.2 or 8.15.7.3 are met, sprinklers shall be installed under exterior roofs, canopies, porte-cochere, balconies, decks, or similar projections exceeding 4 ft (1.2 m) in width.

Revise Section 8.15.7.2* as follows:

8.15.7.2* Sprinklers shall be permitted to be omitted where the canopies, roofs, balconies, decks, or similar projections are constructed with materials that are noncombustible, limited-combustible, or fire retardant treated wood as defined in NFPA 703, *Standard for Fire Retardant–Treated Wood and Fire-Retardant Coatings for Building Materials.*

Delete Section A.8.15.7.2 of Annex

Revise Section 8.15.7.3

8.15.7.3 Sprinklers shall be permitted to be omitted from below the canopies, roofs, balconies, decks, or similar projections are combustible construction, provided the exposed finish material on the roof, or canopy is noncombustible, limited-combustible, or fire retardant treated wood as defined in NFPA 703, *Standard for Fire Retardant–Treated Wood and Fire-Retardant Coatings for Building Materials,* and the roofs, or canopies contains only sprinklered concealed spaces or any of the following unsprinklered combustible concealed spaces:

(1) Combustible concealed spaces filled entirely with noncombustible insulation.

(2) Light or ordinary hazard occupancies where noncombustible or limited-combustible ceilings are directly attached to the bottom of solid wood joists so as to create enclosed joist spaces 160 ft^3 (4.5 m^3) or less in volume, including space below insulation that is laid directly on top or within the ceiling joists in an otherwise sprinklered attic [See 11.2.3.1.4(4)(d)].

(3) Concealed spaces over isolated small roofs, or canopies not exceeding 55 ft^2 (5.1 m^2).

NFPA—continued

Delete language to section 8.15.7.4 and reserve section number.
8.15.7.4.

Revise Annex Section A.8.15.7.5 as follows:

A.8.15.7.5 The presence of planters, newspaper machines and *similar items,* should not be considered storage.

Add Section 8.15.7.6 as follows:

8.15.7.6 *Sprinklers may be omitted for following structures:*

(1) Solar photovoltaic panel structures with no use underneath. Signs may be provided, as determined by the enforcing agency prohibiting any use underneath including storage.

(2) Solar photovoltaic (PV) panels supported by framing that have sufficient uniformly distributed and unobstructed openings throughout the top of the array (horizontal plane) to allow heat and gases to escape, as determined by the enforcing agency.

Add new Sections 8.16.1.1.4 and 8.16.1.1.5 as follows:

8.16.1.1.4 *Where a system includes floor control valves, a hydraulic design information sign containing information for the floor shall be provided at each floor control valve. A hydraulic design information sign shall be provided for each area calculated. The installing contractor shall identify a hydraulically designed sprinkler system with a permanently marked weatherproof metal or rigid plastic sign secured with corrosion resistant wire, chain, or other approved means. Such signs shall be placed at the alarm valve, dry pipe valve, preaction valve, or deluge valve supplying the corresponding hydraulically designed area.*

8.16.1.1.5 *Control valves, check valves, drain valves, antifreeze valves shall be readily accessible for inspection, testing, and maintenance. Valves located more than 7 feet above the finished floor shall be provided with a means of opening and closing the valve from the floor level.*

Add new Sections 8.16.1.7, 8.16.1.7.1, 8.16.1.7.1.1, 8.16.1.7.1.2, 8.16.1.7.1.2, 8.16.1.7.1.3, 8.16.1.7.2, as follows:

8.16.1.7 Sectional Valves.

8.16.1.7.1 Private fire service main systems shall have sectional control valves at appropriate points in order to permit sectionalizing the system in the event of a break or for the making of repairs or extensions.

8.16.1.7.1.1 *Sectional control valves are not required when the fire service main system serves less than six fire appurtenances.*

8.16.1.7.1.2 *Sectional control valves shall be indicating valves in accordance with Section 6.7.1.3.*

8.16.1.7.1.3 *Sectional control valves shall be located so that no more than five fire appurtenances are affected by shut-down of any single portion of the fire service main. Each fire hydrant, fire sprinkler system riser, and standpipe riser shall be considered a separate fire appurtenance. In-rack sprinkler systems shall not be considered as a separate appurtenance.*

8.16.1.7.1.4 The number of fire appurtenances between sectional control valves is allowed to be modified by the authority having jurisdiction.

8.16.1.7.2 A valve shall be provided on each bank where a main crosses a *body of* water or outside the building foundation(s) where the main or section of main runs under a building.

Add new Section 9.1.3.9.1.1 as follows:

9.1.3.9.1.1 *Powder-driven studs used for attaching hangers to the building structure are prohibited in Seismic design Categories C, D, E and F.*

Revise Section 9.3.5.11.4 as follows:

9.3.5.11.4 *Where threaded pipe is used for sway bracing, it shall have a wall thickness of not less than Schedule 40.*

Replace Section 9.3.5.12.4 as follows:

Lag screws or power-driven fasteners shall not be used to attach braces to the building structure.

Add language to the beginning of Section 9.3.5.12.6 as follows:

9.3.5.12.6 *Fastening methods other than those identified in 9.3.5.12* shall not apply to other fastening methods, which shall be acceptable for use if certified by a registered professional engineer to support the loads determined in accordance with the criteria in 9.3.5.9. Calculations shall be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction.

NFPA—continued

Revise Section 9.3.5.12.7.2 as follows:

9.3.5.12.7.2 Concrete anchors other than those shown in Figure 9.3.5.12.1 *and identified in 9.3.5.11.11* shall be acceptable for use where designed in accordance with the requirements of the building code and certified by a registered professional engineer.

Revise Section 9.3.6.1(3) as follows:

9.3.6.1*(3) *No. 12, 440 lb (200 Kg) wire installed at least 45 degrees from the vertical plane and anchored on both sides of the pipe. Powder-driven fasteners for attaching restraint is allowed to be used provided that the restraint component does not support the dead load.*

Revise Section 10.6.4 as follows:

10.6.4 Pipe joints shall not be located under foundation footings. *The pipe under the building or building foundation shall not contain mechanical joints.*

Exceptions:

1. Where allowed in accordance with 10.6.2.

2. Alternate designs may be utilized where designed by a registered professional engineer and approved by the enforcing agency.

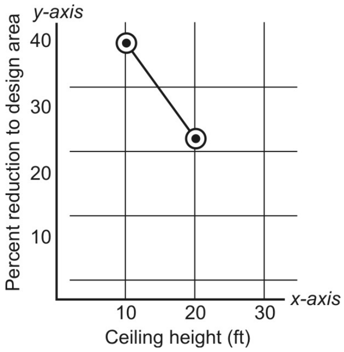
Revise Section 11.2.3.1.4(4)(i) as follows:

11.2.3.1.4(4)(i) *Exterior columns under 10 ft^2 (0.93m^2) in total area, formed by studs or wood joist, with no sources of ignition within the column, supporting exterior canopies that are fully protected with a sprinkler system.*

Revise Section 11.2.3.2.3.1 as follows:

11.2.3.2.3.1 Where listed quick-response sprinklers, excluding extended coverage quick-response sprinklers, are used throughout a system or portion of a system having the same hydraulic design basis, the system area of operation shall be permitted to be reduced without revising the density as indicated in Figure 11.2.3.2.3.1 when all of the following conditions are satisfied:

(1) Wet pipe system
(2) Light hazard occupancy
(3) 20 ft (6.1 m) maximum ceiling height
(4) There are no unprotected ceiling pockets as allowed by 8.6.7 and 8.8.7 exceeding 32 ft^2 (3 m^2)



Note: $y = \frac{-3x}{2} + 55$

For ceiling height ≥ 10 ft and ≤ 20 ft, $y = \frac{-3x}{2} + 55$

For ceiling height < 10 ft, $y = 40$

For ceiling height > 20 ft, $y = 0$

For SI units, 1 ft = 0.31 m.

FIGURE 11.2.3.2.3.1 Design Area Reduction for Quick-Response Sprinklers.

Revise Section 11.2.3.2.3.2 as follows:

11.2.3.2.3.2 The number of sprinklers in the design area shall never be less than *seven.*

NFPA—continued

Revise Section 12.1.1.2 as follows:

12.1.1.2 Early suppression fast-response (ESFR) sprinklers shall not be used in buildings with automatic heat or smoke vents unless the vents use a standard-response operating mechanism *with a minimum temperature rating of 360ºF (182ºC) or 100ºF (56ºC) above the operating temperature of the sprinklers, whichever is higher.*

Add Section 25.1(5)

25.1 Approval of Sprinkler Systems and Private Fire Service Mains.

The installing contractor shall do the following:

(1) Notify the authority having jurisdiction and the property owner or property owner's authorized representative of the time and date testing will be performed.

(2) Perform all required testing *(see Section 24.2).*

(3) Complete and sign the appropriate contractor's material and test certificate(s) *(see Figure 24.1).*

(4) Remove all caps and straps prior to placing the sprinkler system in service.

(5) Upon system acceptance by the authority having jurisdiction a label prescribed by Title 19 California Code of Regulations, Chapter 5 shall be affixed to each system riser.

Revise Section 25.4(2) and Add Section 25.4(3) as follows:

25.4 Instructions.

The installing contractor shall provide the property owner or the property owner's authorized representative with the following:

(1) All literature and instructions provided by the manufacturer describing proper operation and maintenance of any equipment and devices installed.

(2) NFPA 25, *Standard for the Inspection, testing, and maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems, 2013 California Edition.*

(3) Title 19, California Code of Regulations, Chapter 5, "Fire Extinguishing Systems."

Add sentence at the end of Section 25.5.1 as follows:

25.5.1 *"Pipe schedule systems shall be provided with a sign indicating that the system was designed and installed as a pipe schedule system and the hazard classification(s) included in the design."*

Revise Section 25.5.2(3) and Add Sections 25.5.2(7) to (14) as follows:

25.5.2 The sign shall include the following information:

(3) Required flow and pressure of the system at the base of the riser.

(7) Required flow and pressure of the system at the water supply source.

(8) Required flow and pressure of the system at the discharge side of the fire pump where a fire pump is installed.

(9) Type or types and number of sprinklers or nozzles installed including the orifice size, temperature rating, orientation, K-Factor, sprinkler identification number (SIN) for sprinkler heads when applicable, and response type.

(10) The minimum discharge flow rate and pressure required from the hydraulically most demanding sprinkler.

(11) The required pressure settings for pressure reducing valves.

(12) For deluge sprinkler systems, the required flow and pressure at the hydraulically most demanding sprinkler or nozzle.

(13) The protection area per sprinkler based on the hydraulic calculations.

(14) The edition of NFPA 13 to which the system was designed and installed.

Revise Section 25.6.1 as follows:

25.6.1 *California Edition* NFPA 25, *Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems.*

NFPA—continued

13D—*13* Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One-and Two-Family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes as amended* 903.3.1.3, 903.3.5.1.1

NFPA 13D, Amended Sections as follows:

Revise 6.2.2, 6.2.2.1, 6.2.4 to read as follows:

6.2.2 Where a *well*, pump, tank *or combination thereof* is the source of supply for a fire sprinkler system, the *water supply shall serve both domestic and fire sprinkler systems, and* the following shall be met:

(1) A test connection shall be provided downstream of the pump that creates a flow of water equal to the smallest sprinkler on the system. The connection shall return water to the tank.

(2) Any disconnecting means for the pump shall be approved.

(3) A method for refilling the tank shall be piped to the tank.

(4) A method of seeing the water level in the tank shall be provided without having to open the tank.

(5) The pump shall not be permitted to sit directly on the floor.

6.2.2.1 *Where a fire sprinkler system is supplied by a stored water source with an automatically operated means of pressurizing the system other than an electric pump, the water supply may serve the sprinkler system only.*

6.2.4 *Where a water supply serves both domestic and fire sprinkler systems, 5 gpm (19 L/min) shall be added to the sprinkler system demand at the point where the systems are connected, to determine the size of common piping and the size of the total water supply requirements where no provision is made to prevent flow into the domestic water system upon operation of a sprinkler.*

8.3.4* Sprinklers shall not be required in *detached* garages, open attached porches, carports *with no habitable space above,* and similar structures.

Add Section 8.4 as follows:

8.4 *Sprinklers shall be permitted to be omitted for following structures:*

(1) Solar photovoltaic panel structures with no use underneath. Signs may be provided, as determined by the enforcing agency prohibiting any use underneath including storage.

(2) Solar photovoltaic (PV) panels supported by framing that have sufficient uniformly distributed and unobstructed openings throughout the top of the array (horizontal plane) to allow heat and gases to escape, as determined by the enforcing agency.

13R—13 Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies up to and Including Four Stories in Height as amended 903.3.1.2, 903.3.5.1.1, 903.3.5.1.2, 903.4

NFPA 13R, Amended Sections as follows:

Revise Section 2.2 and add publications as follows:

2.2 NFPA Publications.

NFPA 25, *Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems, 2013 California edition.*

Add *new* Section 6.6.9, as follows:

6.6.9 Sprinklers shall be permitted to be omitted for following structures:

(1) Solar photovoltaic panel structures with no use underneath. Signs may be provided, as determined by the enforcing agency prohibiting any use underneath including storage.

(2) Solar photovoltaic (PV) panels supported by framing that have sufficient uniformly distributed and unobstructed openings throughout the top of the array (horizontal plane) to allow heat and gases to escape, as determined by the enforcing agency.

Revise Section 11.4:

11.4 Instructions.

The installing contractor shall provide the property owner or the property owner's authorized representative with the following:

(1) All literature and instructions provided by the manufacturer describing proper operation and maintenance of any equipment and devices installed.

NFPA—continued

(2) NFPA 25, Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems 2013 California Edition and Title 19, California Code of Regulations, Chapter 5.

(3) Once the system is accepted by the authority having jurisdiction a label as prescribed by Title 19, California Code of Regulations, Chapter 5, shall be affixed to each system riser.

14—*13*	Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems*, as amended*	905.2, 905.3.4, 905.4.2, 905.6.2, 905.8

****NFPA 14, Amended Sections as follows:***

Replace Section 6.3.7.1

***6.3.7.1** System water supply valves, isolation control valves, and other valves in fire mains shall be supervised in an approved manner in the open position by one of the following methods:*

(1) Where a building has a fire alarm system or a sprinkler monitoring system installed, the valve shall be supervised by:

(a) a central station, proprietary, or remote supervising station, or

(b) a local signaling service that initiates an audible signal at a constantly attended location.

(2) Where a building does not have a fire alarm system or a sprinkler monitoring system installed, the valve shall be supervised by:

(a) Locking the valves in the open position, or

(b) Sealing of valves and an approved weekly recorded inspection where valves are located within fenced enclosures under the control of the owner.

15—12	Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection	5704.2.9.2.3
16—11	Installation of Foam-water Sprinkler and Foam-water Spray Systems	904.7, 904.11
17—09	Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems	Table 901.6.1, 904.6, 904.11
17A—09	Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems	Table 901.6.1, 904.5, 904.11
20—*13*	Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection	913.1, 913.2, 913.5.1, 913.6
22—*13*	Water Tanks for Private Fire Protection	507.2.2
24—*13*	Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances	507.2.1, 2809.5

****NFPA 24, Amended Sections as follows:***

Amend Section 4.2.1

Section 4.2.1. Installation work shall be done by fully experienced and responsible *contractors. Contractors shall be appropriately licensed in the State of California to install private fire service mains and their appurtenances.*

Revise Section 4.2.2 as follows:

4.2.2 *Installation or modification of private fire service mains shall not begin until plans are approved and appropriate permits secured from the* authority having jurisdiction.

Add Section 4.2.2.1 as follows:

4.2.2.1 *As approved by the authority having jurisdiction, emergency repair of existing system may start immediately, with plans being submitted to the authority having jurisdiction within 96 hours from the start of the repair work.*

Revise Section 5.9.1.2 as follows:

Section 5.9.1.2 Fire department connections shall be properly supported *and protected from mechanical damage.*

Revise Section 5.9.5.1 as follows:

5.9.5.1 Fire department connections shall be on the street side of buildings and *as approved by the authority having jurisdiction.*

Revise Section 6.5.1 as follows:

6.5.1 Private fire service main systems shall have sectional control valves at appropriate points in order to permit sectionalizing the system in the event of a break or for the making of repairs or extensions.

NFPA—continued

Add Section 6.5.2.1 – 6.5.2.3

6.5.2.1 *Sectional control valves are not required when the fire service main system serves less than six fire appurtenances.*

6.5.2.2 *Sectional control valves shall be indicating valves in accordance with Section 6.7.1.3.*

6.5.2.3 *Sectional control valves shall be located so that no more than five fire appurtenances are affected by shut-down of any single portion of the fire service main. Each fire hydrant, fire sprinkler system riser, and standpipe riser shall be considered a separate fire appurtenance. In-rack sprinkler systems shall not be considered as a separate appurtenance.*

6.5.2.4 *The number of fire appurtenances between sectional control valves is allowed to be modified by the authority having jurisdiction.*

Revise Section 6.6.2 as follows:

6.6.2 A sectional valve shall be provided at the following locations:

(1) On each bank where a main crosses *a body of* water

(2) Outside the building foundation(s) where a main or a section of a main runs under a building

Revise Section 10.6.5 as follows:

10.6.5 Pipe joints shall not be located under foundation footings. *The pipe under the building or building foundation shall not contain mechanical joints.*

Exceptions:

1. *Where allowed in accordance with 10.6.2*
2. *Alternate designs may be utilized where designed by a registered professional engineer and approved by the enforcing agency.*

Revise Section 10.9.1 as follows:

10.9.1 *Backfill shall be well tamped in layers or puddle under and around pipes to prevent settlement or lateral movement.* Backfill shall consist of clean fill sand or pea gravel to a minimum 6″ below and to a minimum of 12″ above the pipe *and shall contain no ashes, cinders, refuse, organic matter, or other corrosive materials. Other backfill materials and methods are permitted where designed by a registered professional engineer and approved by the enforcing agency.*

25—13CA	*California NFPA 25 Edition (Based on the 2013 Edition)* Inspection, Testing and Maintenance of Water-based Fire Protection Systems	507.5.3, Table 901.6.1, 904.7.1, 912.6, 913.5, 1101.1
30—12	Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code	5703.6.2, 5703.6.2.1, 5704.2.7, 5704.2.7.1, 5704.2.7.2, 5704.2.7.3.2, 5704.2.7.3.6, 5704.2.7.4, 5704.2.7.6, 5704.2.7.7, 5704.2.7.8, 5704.2.7.9, 5704.2.9.3, 5704.2.9.4, 5704.2.9.6.1.1, 5704.2.9.6.1.2, 5704.2.9.6.1.3, 5704.2.9.6.1.4, 5704.2.9.6.1.5, 5704.2.9.6.2, 5704.2.9.7.4, 5704.2.10.2, 5704.2.11.4, 5704.2.11.5.2, 5704.2.12.1, 5704.3.1, 5704.3.6, Table 5704.3.6.3(1), Table 5704.3.6.3(2), Table 5704.3.6.3(3), 5704.3.7.2.3, 5704.3.8.4, 5706.8.3
30A—12	Code for Motor Fuel-dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages	2301.4, 2301.5, 2301.6, 2306.6.3, 2310.1
30B—11	Manufacture and Storage of Aerosol Products	5101.1, 5103.1, 5104.1, Table 5104.3.1, Table 5104.3.2, Table 5104.3.2.2, 5104.4.1, 5104.5.2, 5104.6, 5106.2.3, 5106.3.2, Table 5106.4,5106.5.1, 5106.5.6, 5107.1
31—*11*	Installation of Oil-burning Equipment	603.1.7, 603.3.1, 603.3.3
32—07	Dry Cleaning Plants, *as amended*	*2101.1.1, 21*07.1, 2107.3

***NFPA 32, Amended Sections as follows:**

2.2 NFPA Publications.

4.4.1.1 General building and structure design and construction shall be in accordance with *California Building Code.*

4.4.4 Means of Egress. Means of egress shall conform with the provisions of *California Building Code.*

NFPA—continued

4.6.2 Automatic Sprinkler Systems. Where required by this standard, automatic sprinkler systems shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems,* and periodically inspected, tested, and maintained in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5.*

4.6.4 Portable Fire Extinguishers. Suitable numbers and types of portable fire extinguishers shall be installed and maintained throughout the drycleaning plant in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3.*

7.3.2 Electrical Installations. Electrical equipment and wiring in a Type II drycleaning room shall comply with the provisions of *California Electrical Code, for use in Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations.*

33—11	Spray Application Using Flammable or Combustible Materials	2404.3.2
34—11	Dipping and Coating Processes Using Flammable or Combustible Liquids	2405.3, 2405.4.1.1
35—11	Manufacture of Organic Coatings	2901.3, 2905.4
37—10	*Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines*	
40—11	Storage and Handling of Cellulose Nitrate Film	306.2
51—13	Design and Installation of Oxygen-fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting and Allied Processes	3501.5, 3507.1, 3509.1
51A—*12*	Acetylene Cylinder Charging Plants	3508.1
52—*13*	Vehicular Gaseous Fuel System Code	5301.1
54—12	*National Fuel Gas Code*	
55—*13*	Compressed Gases and Cryogenic Fluids *Code*	2309.2.1, 5501.1, 5801.1, 6301.1
58—11	Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code	603.4.2.1.1, 6101.1, 6103.1, 6103.2.1, 6103.2.1.2, 6103.2.1.7, 6103.2.2, 6104.1, 6104.3.2, 6104.4, 6106.2, 6106.3, 6107.2, 6108.1, 6108.2, 6109.11.2, 6111.3
59A—*13*	Production, Storage and Handling of Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG)	5301.1, 5501.1
61—*13*	Prevention of Fires and Dust Explosions in Agricultural and Food Processing Facilities	Table 2204.1
69—08	Explosion Prevention Systems	911.1, 911.3, Table 2204.1
70—11	National Electrical Code	603.1.3, 603.1.7, 603.5.2, 604.2.15.1, 605.3, 605.4, 605.9, 605.11, 606.16, 610.5, 904.3.1, 907.6.1, 909.11, 909.12.1, 909.16.3, 1208.2, 2006.3.4, 2104.2.3, Table 2204.1, 2305.4, 2308.8.1.2.4, 2309.2.3, 2311.3.1, 2311.8.1.2.4, 2403.2.1, 2403.2.1.1, 2403.2.1.4, 2403.2.5, 2403.12.6.1, 2404.9.4, 2404.15.7, 2504.5, 2603.2.1, 2606.4, 2703.7.1, 2703.7.2, 2703.7.3, 2803.4, 2904.1, 3304.7, 5003.7.3, 5303.7.6, 5303.8, 5303.16.11, 5303.16.14, 5503.6, 5503.6.2, 5703.1, Table 5703.1.1, 5703.1.3, 5704.2.8.12, 5704.2.8.17, 5706.2.8, 5803.1.5, 5803.1.5.1,5807.1.10, 5906.5.5, 5906.5.6, 6004.2.2.8, 6109.15.1
72—*13*	National Fire Alarm *and Signaling* Code*, as amended*	508.1.5, Table 901.6.1, 903.4.1, 904.3.5, 907.2, 907.2.6, 907.2.9.3, 907.2.11,907.2.13.2, 907.3, 907.3.3, 907.3.4, 907.5.2.1.2, 907.5.2.2, 907.6, 907.6.1, 907.6.2, 907.6.5, 907.7, 907.7.1, 907.7.2, 907.8, 907.8.2, 907.8.5, I101.1

NFPA 72, Amended Sections as follows:

10.3.1 Equipment constructed and installed in conformity with this Code shall be listed for the purpose for which it is used. *Fire alarm systems and components shall be California State Fire Marshal approved and listed in accordance with California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1.*

10.3.3 All devices and appliances that receive their power from the initiating device circuit or signaling line circuit of a control unit shall be *California State Fire Marshal* listed for use with the control unit.

10.7.1 *Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction,* ECS priority signals when evaluated by stakeholders through risk analysis in accordance with 24.3.11 shall be permitted to take precedence over all other signals.

12.3.7 - (4) Where the vertically run conductors are contained in a 2-hour rated cable assembly, or enclosed (installed) in a 2-hour rated enclosure or a listed circuit integrity (C.I.) cable, which meets or exceeds a 2-hour fire-resistive rating.

14.4.6.1 Testing. Household fire alarm systems shall be *tested in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions according to the methods of Table 14.4.3.2.*

17.15 Fire Extinguisher Electronic Monitoring Device. A fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device shall indicate those conditions for a specific fire extinguisher required by *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 1, Section 574.2 (c) and California Fire Code to a fire alarm control unit.*

21.3.6 Smoke detectors shall not be installed in unsprinklered elevator hoistways unless they are installed to activate the elevator hoistway smoke relief equipment *or where required by Chapter 30 of the California Building Code.*

NFPA—continued

23.8.5.1.2 Where connected to a supervising station, fire alarm systems employing automatic fire detectors or waterflow detection devices shall include a manual fire alarm box to initiate a signal to the supervising station.

> **Exception:** Fire alarm systems dedicated to elevator recall control, supervisory service and fire sprinkler monitoring *as permitted in section 21.3 of NFPA 72.*

23.8.5.4.1 Systems equipped with alarm verification features shall be permitted under the following conditions:

(1) The alarm verification feature is not initially enabled unless conditions or occupant activities that are expected to cause nuisance alarms are anticipated in the area that is protected by the smoke detectors. Enabling of the alarm verification feature shall be protected by password or limited access.

(2) A smoke detector that is continuously subjected to a smoke concentration above alarm threshold does not delay the system functions of Sections 10.7 through 10.16, 23.8.1.1, or 21.2.1 by more than 30 seconds.

(3) Actuation of an alarm-initiating device other than a smoke detector causes the system functions of Sections 10.7 through 10.16, 23.8.1.1, or 21.2.1 without additional delay.

(4) The current status of the alarm verification feature is shown on the record of completion *(see Figure 7.8.2(a), Item 4.3).*

(5) Operation of a patient room smoke detector in I-2 and R-2.1 occupancies shall not include an alarm verification feature.

29.8.3.4 Specific location requirements. The installation of smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be located where ambient conditions, including humidity and temperature, are outside the limits specified by the manufacturer's published instructions.

(2) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be located within unfinished attics or garages or in other spaces where temperatures can fall below 40ºF (4ºC) or exceed 100ºF (38ºC).

(3) Where the mounting surface could become considerably warmer or cooler than the room, such as a poorly insulated ceiling below an unfinished attic or an exterior wall, smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be mounted on an inside wall.

(4) Smoke alarms or smoke detectors shall be installed a minimum of 20 feet horizontal distance from a permanently installed cooking appliance.

Exceptions: *Ionization smoke alarms with an alarm silencing switch or photoelectric smoke alarms shall be permitted to be installed 10 feet (3 m) or greater from a permanently installed cooking appliance.*

Photoelectric smoke alarms shall be permitted to be installed greater than 6 feet (1.8 m) from a permanently installed cooking appliance where the kitchen or cooking area and adjacent spaces have no clear interior partitions and the 10 ft distances would prohibit the placement of a smoke alarm or smoke detector required by other sections of the code.

Smoke alarms listed for use in close proximity to a permanently installed cooking appliance.

(5) Installation near bathrooms. Smoke alarms shall be installed not less than a 3-foot (0.91 m) horizontal distance from the door or opening of a bathroom that contains a bathtub or shower unless this would prevent placement of a smoke alarm required by other sections of the code.

(6) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36 in. (910 mm) horizontal path from the supply registers of a forced air heating or cooling system and shall be installed outside of the direct airflow from those registers.

(7) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36 in. (910 mm) horizontal path from the tip of the blade of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan.

(8) Where stairs lead to other occupied levels, a smoke alarm or smoke detector shall be located so that smoke rising in the stairway cannot be prevented from reaching the smoke alarm or smoke detector by an intervening door or obstruction.

(9) For stairways leading up from a basement, smoke alarms or smoke detectors shall be located on the basement ceiling near the entry to the stairs.

(10) For tray-shaped ceilings (coffered ceilings), smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be installed on the highest portion of the ceiling or on the sloped portion of the ceiling within 12 in. (300 mm) vertically down from the highest point.

(11) Smoke alarms and detectors installed in rooms with joists or beams shall comply with the requirements of 17.7.3.2.4 of NFPA 72.

(12) Heat alarms and detectors installed in rooms with joists or beams shall comply with the requirements of 17.6.3 of NFPA 72.

NFPA—continued

29.3.1 All devices, combinations of devices, and equipment to be installed in conformity with this chapter shall be approved *and* listed *by the California State Fire Marshal* for the purposes for which they are intended.

29.5.2.1.1* Smoke and Heat Alarms. Unless exempted by applicable laws, codes, or standards, smoke or heat alarms used to provide a fire-warning function, and when two or more alarms are installed within a dwelling unit, suite of rooms, or similar area, shall be arranged so that the operation of any smoke or heat alarm causes all alarms within these locations to sound.

Exception to 29.5.2.1.1 not adopted by the SFM

29.7.2.1 *The alarm verification feature shall not be used for household fire warning equipment.*

29.7.6.7.1 *The alarm verification feature shall not be used for household fire warning equipment.*

80—*13*	Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives	703.1.3, 1008.1.4.3
82—09	*Incinerators, Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment*	*603.8*
85—11	Boiler and Combustion System Hazards Code	Table 2204.1
86—11	Ovens and Furnaces	3001.1
92—12	*Standard for Smoke Control Systems*	
99—*12*	Health Care Facilities *Code*	5306.4
101—*12*	Life Safety Code	*807.4.3.2,* 1028.6.2
105—*13*	Installation of Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives	703.1.2
110—*13*	Emergency and Standby Power Systems	604.1, 604.3, 604.4, 913.5.2, 913.5.3
111—*13*	Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems	604.1, 604.3, 604.4
120—10	*Fire Prevention and Control in Coal Mines*	Table 2204.1
160—11	Flame Effects Before an Audience	308.3.2
170—09	*Standard for Fire Safety and Emergency Symbols*	*907.1.2, 1024.2.6.1*
204—*12*	Standard for Smoke and Heat Venting	Table 901.6.1, 910.5
211—*13*	Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel-burning Appliances	603.2
241—*13*	Safeguarding Construction, Alteration and Demolition Operations	3301.1
253—11	Standard Test for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source	804.3.1, 804.3.2, 804.4
260—*13*	Methods of Tests and Classification System for Cigarette Ignition Resistance of Components of Upholstered Furniture	805.1.1.1, 805.2.1.1, 805.3.1.1, 805.4.1.1
261—*13*	Method of Test for Determining Resistance of Mock-up Upholstered Furniture Material Assemblies to Ignition by Smoldering Cigarettes	805.2.1.1, 805.3.1.1, 805.4.1.1
265—11	Method of Fire Tests for Evaluating Room Fire Growth Contribution of Textile Wall Coverings in Full Height Panels and Walls	803.5.1, 803.5.1.1, 803.5.1.2, 803.5.2, 803.6
286—11	Standard Method of Fire Tests for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth	803.1, 803.1.2, 803.1.2.1, 803.5.1, 803.5.2, 803.6
289—*13*	Standard Method of Fire Test for Individual Fuel Packages	806.2, 807.4.2.1, 808.3
303—11	Fire Protection Standard for Marinas and Boatyards	905.3.7, 3603.5, 3603.6, 3604.2
318—*12*	Standard for the Protection of Semiconductor Fabrication Facilities	2703.16
385—*12*	Tank Vehicles for Flammable and Combustible Liquids	5706.5.4.5, 5706.6, 5706.6.1
400—13	*Hazardous Materials Code*	
407—12	Aircraft Fuel Servicing	2006.2, 2006.3
409—*11*	Aircraft Hangars	914.8.2, Table 914.8.2, 914.8.2.1, 914.8.5
484—12	Combustible Metals	Table 2204.1
495—*13*	Explosive Materials Code	202, 911.1, 911.4, 5601.1.1, 5601.1.5, 5604.2, 5604.6.2, 5604.6.3, 5604.7.1, 5605.1, 5606.1, 5606.5.2.1, 5606.5.2.3, 5607.1, 5607.9, 5607.11, 3307.15
498—*13*	Safe Havens and Interchange Lots for Vehicles Transporting Explosives	5601.1.2
502—14	*Standard for Road Tunnels, Bridges, and Other Limited Access Highways*	*319*
505—*13*	Powered Industrial Trucks, Including Type Designations, Areas of Use, Maintenance and Operation	5003.7.3
654—*13*	Prevention of Fire and Dust Explosions from the Manufacturing, Processing and Handling of Combustible Particulate Solids	Table 2204.1
655—12	Prevention of Sulfur Fires and Explosions	Table 2204.1
664—12	Prevention of Fires and Explosions in Wood Processing and Woodworking Facilities	Table 2204.1, 2805.3
701—10	Methods of Fire Tests for Flame-propagation of Textiles and Films	806.2, 807.1, 807.1.2, 807.2, 807.4.2.2, 2603.5, 3104.2

NFPA—continued

703—12	Fire Retardant *Treated* Wood and Fire Retardant Coatings for Building Materials	803.4
704—12	Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response	606.7, 202, 3104.2, 5003.2.2.1, 5003.2.2.2, 5003.5, 5003.10.2, 5005.1.10, 5005.2.1.1, 5005.4.4, 5503.4.1, 5704.2.3.2, F101.1, F101.2
720—*12*	Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Warning Equipment in Dwelling Units	908.7, 908.7.1, 1103.9
750—10	Water Mist Fire Protection Systems	Table 901.6.1
1122—*13*	Model Rocketry	5601.1.4
1123—10	Fireworks Display	202, 5604.2, 5608.1, 5608.2.2, 5608.5, 5608.6
1124—*13*	Manufacture, Transportation, Storage and Retail Sales of Fireworks and Pyrotechnic Articles	202, 5604.2, 5605.1, 5605.3, 5605.4, 5605.5
1125—12	Manufacture of Model Rocket and High Power Rocket Motors	5601.1.4
1126—11	Use of Pyrotechnics Before a Proximate Audience	5604.2, 5605.1, 5608.1, 5608.2.2, 5608.4, 5608.5
1127—*13*	High Power Rocketry	5601.1.4
1142—12	Water Supply for Suburban and Rural Fire Fighting	B103.3
2001—*12*	Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems *as amended**	Table 901.6.1, 904.10

NFPA 2001, Amended Sections as follows:

***4.3.5.1.1** Alarms signals from the fire extinguishing system shall not interfere with the building fire alarm signal.*

***4.3.5.2.1.** The lens on visual appliances shall be "red" in color.*

***Exception:** Other lens colors are permitted where approved by the enforcing agency.*

Text continues on page 523.

This page left intentionally blank.
Text continues on page 523.

This page left intentionally blank.

Text continues on page 523.

This page left intentionally blank.
Text continues on page 523.

SFM

State of California
Department of Forestry and Fire Protection
Office of the State Fire Marshal
P.O. Box 944246
Sacramento, CA 94246-2460

Standard reference number	*Title*	*Referenced in code section number*
SFM 12-3	*Releasing Systems for Security Bars in Dwellings*	
SFM 12-7-3	*Fire-testing Furnaces*	
SFM 12-7A-1	*Exterior Wall Siding and Sheathing*	
SFM 12-7A-2	*Exterior Window*	
SFM 12-7A-3	*Under Eave*	
SFM 12-7A-4	*Decking*	
SFM 12-7A-4A	*Decking Alternate Method A*	
SFM 12-7A-5	*Ignition Resistant Building Material*	
SFM 12-7A-4	*Decking*	
SFM 12-8-100	*Room Fire Tests for Wall and Ceiling Materials*	
SFM 12-10-1	*Power Operated Exit Doors*	
SFM 12-10-2	*Single Point Latching or Locking Devices*	
SFM 12-10-3	*Emergency Exit and Panic Hardware*	

(The Office of the State Fire Marshal standards referred to above are found in the California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 12.)

UL

Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
13—96	*Power-limited Circuit Cables*	
10C—09	Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies	1008.1.10.1
30—95	Metal Safety Cans—with Revisions through July 2009	5003.9.10, 5005.1.10, 5705.2.4
38—99	*Manually Actuated Signaling Boxes—with Revisions through February 2, 2005 as amended.**	

Amend Section 14.1.5 as follows:

14.1.5 *A signaling box having a glass panel, disc, rod or similar part that must be broken to operate it for a signal or for access to its actuating means shall satisfactorily complete five part-breaking operations using the means provided with the box, without jamming of the mechanism or other interference by broken particles. It shall be practicable to remove and replace the broken parts. A signaling box shall not have a glass panel, disc, rod or similar part requiring a striking action by grasping a tool to operate it for a signal. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22 N) of force.*

Add Appendix B chapter to UL 38 (1999) as follows:

Appendix B,

14.1.5 Operation. *Controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist.*

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
58—96	Steel Underground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids—with Revisions through July 1998	5704.2.13.1.5
80—07	Steel Tanks for Oil-Burner Fuels and Other Combustible Liquids	610.2
142—06	Steel Aboveground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids	610.2, 2306.2.3
193—04	*Alarm Valves for Fire-Protection Service*	
199—95	*Automatic Sprinklers for Fire Protection Service—with Revisions through August 19, 2005*	
199E—04	Outline of Investigation for Fire Testing of Sprinklers and Water Spray Nozzles for Protection of Deep Fat Fryers	904.11.4.1
217—06	Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms—with Revisions through April 2010	907.2.11
228—97	*Door Closers/Holders, with or without Integral Smoke Detectors—with Revisions through January 26, 2006*	
260—04	*Dry Pipe and Deluge Valves for Fire Protection Service*	
262—04	*Gate Valves for Fire Protection Service*	
268—09	Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Signaling Systems	907.2.6.2

UL—continued

268A—98	*Smoke Detectors for Duct Application—with Revisions through October 22, 2003*	
294—99	Access Control System Units—with Revisions through 2009	1008.1.9.8
300—05	Fire Testing of Fire Extinguishing Systems for Protection of Commercial Cooking Equipment	904.11
305—97	Panic Hardware—with Revisions through January 2007	1008.1.10.1
312—04	*Check Valves for Fire-Protection Service*	
325—02	Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver and Window Operators and Systems—with Revisions through February 2010	503.5, 503.6, D103.5
346—05	*Waterflow Indicators for Fire Protective Signaling Systems*	
464—03	*Audible Signal Appliances—with Revisions through October 10, 2003.*	
497B—04	*Protectors for Data Communication and Fire Alarm Circuits.*	
521—99	*Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems—with Revisions through July 20, 2005*	
539—00	*Single- and Multiple-Station Heat Detectors—with Revisions through August 15, 2005*	
632—00	*Electrically Actuated Transmitters*	
710B—04	Recirculating Systems—with Revisions through December 2009	904.11
723—08	Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials	202, 803.5.1, 803.5.2, 803.6, 803.9, 804.1, 804.2.4
753—04	*Alarm Accessories for Automatic Water Supply Valves for Fire Protection Service*	
790—04	Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings—with Revisions through October 2008	317.2, 317.3
791—06	*Standard for Residential Incinerators.*	*603.8*
793—08	Automatically Operated Roof Vents for Smoke and Heat	910.3.1
813—96	*Commercial Audio Equipment—with Revisions through December 7, 1999.*	
864—03	Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems—with Revisions through February 2010	909.12, 2311.7.2.1.1, 6004.2.2.10.1

Amend No. 55.1 as follows:

RETARD-RESET-RESTART PERIOD – MAXIMUM 30 SECONDS —*No alarm obtained from control unit. Maximum permissible time is 30 seconds.*

Amend Section 55.2.2 as follows:

Where an alarm verification feature is provided, the maximum retard-reset-restart period before an alarm signal can be confirmed and indicated at the control unit, including any control unit reset time and the power-up time for the detector to become operational for alarm, shall not exceed 30 seconds. (The balance of the section text is to remain unchanged).

Add Section 55.2.9 as follows:

Smoke detectors connected to an alarm verification feature shall not be used as releasing devices.

Exception: *Smoke detectors which operate their releasing function immediately upon alarm actuation independent of alarm verification feature.*

Amend Section 89.1.10 as follows:

The existing text of this section is to remain as printed with one editorial amendment as follows:

THE TOTAL DELAY (CONTROL UNIT PLUS SMOKE DETECTORS) SHALL NOT EXCEED 30 SECONDS.

(The balance of the section text is to remain unchanged).

900—04	Air Filter Units—with revisions through November 2009	2404.7.8
924—06	Standard for Safety Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment—with revisions through January 2009	1011.5, 3103.12.6.1
1037—99	Antitheft Alarms and Devices	506.1
1275—05	Flammable Liquid Storage Cabinets—with Revisions through May 2006	5003.8.7.1, 5704.3.2.1.1
1313—93	Standard for Nonmetallic Safety Cans for Petroleum Products—with Revisions through August 2007	5003.9.10
1315—95	Standard for Safety for Metal Waste Paper Containers—with Revisions through August 2007	808.1, 808.2

UL—continued

1316—94	Glass Fiber Reinforced Plastic Underground Storage Tanks for Petroleum Products, Alcohols, and Alcohol-gasoline Mixtures—with Revisions through May 2006	5704.2.13.1.5
1363—07	Relocatable Power Taps—with revisions through October 2009	605.4.1
1975—06	Fire Tests for Foamed Plastics Used for Decorative Purpose	807.4.2.1, 808.3
1994—04	Standard for Luminous Egress Path Marking Systems—with Revisions through April 2010	1024.2.1, 1024.2.3, 1024.2.4, 1024.4
2017—08	General Purpose Signaling Devices and Systems—with Revisions through October 2009	2311.7.2.1.1, 6004.2.2.10.1
2034—08	Single- and Multiple-station Carbon Monoxide Alarms—with Revisions through February 2009	908.7, 1103.9
2075—04	Standard for Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors—with revisions through September 2007	908.7.1, 2311.7.2.1, 6004.2.2.10.1
2079—04	Tests for Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems—with Revisions through June 2008	202
2085—97	Protected Above-ground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids—with Revisions through December 1999	202, 2306.2.2, 2306.2.3, 5704.2.7.4, 5704.2.9.2.3, 5704.2.9.7.5, 5705.3.8.2
2200—98	Stationary Engine Generator Assemblies—with Revisions through December 2009	604.1.1
2208—05	Solvent Distillation Units—with Revisions through December 2009	5705.4.1
2245—06	Below-grade Vaults for Flammable Liquid Storage Tanks	5704.2.8.1
2335—01	Fire Tests of Storage Pallets—with Revisions through March 2010	3208.2.1
2360—00	Test Methods for Determining the Combustibility Characteristics of Plastics Used in Semi-Conductor Tool Construction—with Revisions through June, 2008	2703.10.1.2

USC

United States Code
c/o Superintendent of Documents
U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, DC 20402-9325

Standard reference number	Title	Referenced in code section number
18 USC Part 1, Chapter 40	Importation, Manufacture, Distribution and Storage of Explosive Materials	202
21 USC Chapter 9	United States Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act	4002.1

CALIFORNIA FIRE CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
APPENDIX 4 – SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON USE AND OCCUPANCY

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	SFM		HCD			DSA		OSHPD				BSCC	DHS	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
		T-24	T-19*	1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	1	2	3	4								
Adopt Entire Chapter		X																		
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																				
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																				
[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1]			X																	
Chapter / Section																				
[T-19 §3.26]			X																	

* The *California Code of Regulations* (CCR), Title 19, Division 1 provisions that are found in the *California Fire Code* are a reprint from the current CCR, Title 19, Division 1 text for the code user's convenience only. The scope, applicability and appeals procedures of CCR, Title 19, Division I remain the same.

APPENDIX CHAPTER 4

SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON USE AND OCCUPANCY

SECTION 425
SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR LICENSED 24-HOUR CARE FACILITIES IN A GROUP R-2.1, R-3.1, R-4 [SFM]

***425.1 Scope**. The provisions of this section shall apply to 24-hour care facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 occupancy licensed by a governmental agency.*

***425.2 General.** The provisions in this section shall apply in addition to general requirements in this code.*

***425.2.1** Restraint shall not be practiced in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 occupancies.*

***Exception:** Occupancies which meet all the requirements for a Group I-3 occupancy.*

***425.2.2** Pursuant to Health and Safety Code, Section 13133, regulations of the state fire marshal pertaining to occupancies classified as Residential Facilities (RF) and Residential-care Facilities for the Elderly (RCFE) shall apply uniformly throughout the state and no city, county, city and county, including a charter city or charter county, or fire protection district shall adopt or enforce any ordinance or local rule or regulation relating to fire and panic safety which is inconsistent with these regulations. A city, county, city and county, including a charter city or charter county may, pursuant to Health and Safety Code, Section 13143.5, or a fire protection district may, pursuant to Health and Safety Code, Section 13869.7, adopt standards more stringent than those adopted by the state fire marshal that are reasonably necessary to accommodate local climate, geological, or topographical conditions relating to roof coverings for Residential-care Facilities for the Elderly.*

***Exception:** Local regulations relating to roof coverings in facilities licensed as a Residential Care Facility for the Elderly (RCFE) in accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 13133.*

425.3 Building height and area provisions.

***425.3.1** Group R-2.1, R-3.1 and R-4 shall be constructed in accordance with Table 503 of the California Building Code.*

***[California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, §3.26] Operators Statement – Group I, R-2.1, R-3.1 and R-4 Occupancies.** Every person, firm or corporation maintaining or operating any Group I or R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 occupancy shall provide an operators statement in accordance with Section 13132 of the Health and Safety Code which reads as follows:*

> *"**13132.** Every person, firm or corporation maintaining or operating any facility for the care of the mentally handicapped shall file a statement with the fire authority having jurisdiction within five days of the admission or readmission of a patient stating that such patient is an ambulatory or a nonambulatory person and enumerating the reasons for such classification. Such a statement shall also be filed for each existing patient within 30 days of the effective date of this section.*
>
> *Any statement required to be filed pursuant to this section shall be certified as to its correctness by the person attending such patient.*
>
> *It shall be unlawful for any person, firm, or corporation required to file a statement pursuant to this section to include false statements therein. Any such act shall be in violation of this section and subject to the provisions of Section 13112."*

425.3.2 Limitations six or less clients. Group R-3.1 occupancies where nonambulatory clients are housed above the first story, having more than two stories in height or having more than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2) of floor area above the first story shall not be of less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction throughout.

In Group R-3.1 occupancies housing a bedridden client, the client sleeping room shall not be located above or below the first story.

> ***Exception:** Clients who become bedridden as a result of a temporary illness as defined in Health and Safety Code, Sections 1566.45, 1568.0832, and 1569.72. A temporary illness is an illness which persists for 14 days or less. A bedridden client may be retained in excess of the 14 days upon approval by the Department of Social Services and may continue to be housed on any story in a Group R-3.1 occupancy classified as a licensed residential facility.*

Every licensee admitting or retaining a bedridden resident shall, within 48 hours of the resident's admission or retention in the facility, notify the local fire authority with jurisdiction of the estimated length of time the resident will retain his or her bedridden status in the facility.

***425.3.3 Limitations seven or more clients.** Group R-4 occupancies, where nonambulatory clients are housed above the first story and there is more than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2) of floor area above the first story or housing more than 16 clients above the first story, shall be constructed of not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction throughout.*

***425.3.4 Nonambulatory elderly clients.** Group R-4 occupancies housing nonambulatory elderly clients shall be of not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction throughout.*

425.4 Type of construction provisions.

***425.4.1** Group R-2.1, occupancies are not permitted in non-fire-resistance-rated construction, see Health and Safety Code, Section 13131.5.*

425.5 Fire-resistance-rated construction provisions.

***425.5.1 Smoke barriers required.** Group R-2.1 and R-4 occupancies licensed as a Residential Care Facility (RCF) with individual floor areas over 6000 square feet (557 m^2) per floor, shall be provided with smoke barriers, constructed in accordance with Section 710 of the California Building Code.*

Group R-2.1 occupancies housing bedridden clients shall be provided with smoke barriers constructed in accordance with Section 710 of the California Building Code regardless of the number of clients.

When smoke barriers are required, the area within a smoke compartment shall not exceed 22,500 square feet (2090 m^2) nor shall its travel distance exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm). Such smoke barriers shall divide the floor as equally as possible.

***425.5.2 Smoke partitions.** Group R-2.1 occupancies where smoke partitions are required, framing shall be covered with noncombustible materials having an approved thermal barrier with an index of not less than 15 in accordance with FM 4880, UL 1040, NFPA 286 or UL 1715.*

***425.5.3 Independent egress.** At least two means of egress shall be provided from each smoke compartment created by smoke barriers. Means of egress may pass through adjacent compartments provided it does not return through the smoke compartment from which means of egress originated.*

425.6 Interior finish provisions.

***425.6.1 Interior wall and ceiling finish.** Group R-3.1 occupancies housing a bedridden client shall comply with Interior Wall and Ceiling Finish requirements specified for Group I-2 occupancies in Table 903.3 of the California Building Code.*

***425.6.2 Safety padding.** Padding material used on walls, floors and ceilings in Group I and R-2.1 occupancies shall be of an approved type tested in accordance with the procedures established by State Fire Marshal Standard 12-8-100, Room Fire Test for Wall and Ceiling Materials, California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 12.*

425.7 Fire Protection system provisions.

***425.7.1 Automatic sprinkler systems in Group R-2.1, R-3.1 and R-4 occupancies.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed where required in Section 903.*

***425.7.2 Fire alarm systems in** Group R-2.1 and **R-4 occupancies.** An approved fire alarm system shall be installed where required in Section 907.*

***425.7.3 Smoke alarms in Groups R-2.1, R-3.1, and R-4 occupancies.** Smoke alarms shall be installed where required in Section 907.2.11.2.*

***425.7.4 Hearing impaired.** See Section 907.5.2.3.5.*

425.8 Means of egress provisions.

***425.8.1 General.** In addition to the general means of egress requirements of Chapter 10, this section shall apply to Group R-2.1, R-3.1, and R-4 occupancies.*

425.8.2 Number of exits.

***425.8.2.1** Group R-2.1, R-3.1, and R-4 occupancies shall have a minimum of two exits.*

> ***Exception.** Ancillary use areas or occupancies shall have egress as required by Section 1021.*

425.8.3 Egress arrangements.

***425.8.3.1** Egress through adjoining dwelling units shall not be permitted.*

***425.8.3.2 Group R-3.1 occupancies housing nonambulatory clients.** In a Group R-3.1 occupancy, bedrooms used by nonambulatory clients shall have access to at least one of the required exits which shall conform to one of the following:*

1. *Egress through a hallway or area into a bedroom in the immediate area which has an exit directly to the exterior and the corridor/hallway is constructed consistent with the dwelling unit interior*

walls. The hallway shall be separated from common areas by a solid wood door not less than $1^3/_8$ inch (35 mm) in thickness, maintained self-closing or shall be automatic closing by actuation of a smoke detector installed in accordance with Section 716.5.9 of the California Building Code.

2. *Egress through a hallway which has an exit directly to the exterior. The hallway shall be separated from the rest of the house by a wall constructed consistent with the dwelling unit interior walls and opening protected by a solid wood door not less than $1^3/_8$ inch (35 mm) in thickness, maintained self-closing or shall be automatic closing by actuation of a smoke detector installed in accordance with Section 716.5.9 of the California Building Code.*
3. *Direct exit from the bedroom to the exterior, such doors shall be of a size as to permit the installation of a door not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width and not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) in height. When installed, doors shall be capable of opening at least 90 degrees and shall be so mounted that the clear width of the exit way is not less than 32 inches (813 mm).*
4. *Egress through an adjoining bedroom which exits to the exterior.*

425.8.3.3 Group R-3.1 occupancies housing only one bedridden client. *In Group R-3.1 occupancies housing a bedridden client and not provided with an approved automatic fire sprinkler system, all of the following shall apply:*

1. *In Group R-3.1 occupancies housing a bedridden client, a direct exit to the exterior of the residence shall be provided from the client sleeping room.*
2. *Doors to a bedridden client's sleeping room shall be of a self-closing, positive latching $1^3/_8$ inch solid wood door. Such doors shall be provided with a gasket so installed as to provide a seal where the door meets the jam on both sides and across the top. Doors shall be maintained self-closing or shall be automatic closing by actuation of a smoke detector in accordance with California Building Code, Section 716.5.9.*
3. *Group R-3.1 occupancies housing a bedridden client shall not have a night latch, dead bolt, security chain or any similar locking device installed on any interior door leading from a bedridden client's sleeping room to any interior area such as a corridor, hallway and or general use areas of the residence in accordance with Chapter 10.*
4. *The exterior exit door to a bedridden client's sleeping room shall be operable from both the interior and exterior of the residence.*
5. *Every required exit doorway from a bedridden client sleeping room shall be of a size as to permit the installation of a door not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width and not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) in height. When installed in exit doorways, exit doors shall be capable of opening at least 90 degrees and shall be so mounted that the clear width of the exit way is not less than 32 inches (813 mm).*

Note: *A sliding glass door can be used as an exterior exit doorway as long as it is operable from the inside and outside and the clear width of the exit way is not less than 32 inches (813 mm).*

425.8.3.4 Intervening rooms. *A means of exit shall not pass through more than one intervening room. A means of egress shall not pass through kitchens, storerooms, closets, garages or spaces used for similar purposes.*

Exception: *Kitchens which do not form separate rooms by construction.*

425.8.4 Corridors.

425.8.4.1 *Unless specified by Section 425.8.4, corridors serving Group R-2.1 and Group R-4 occupancies shall comply with Section 1018.1.*

425.8.4.2 *The minimum clear width of a corridor shall be as follows:*

1. *Group R-2.1 occupancies shall have 60 inches (1524 mm) on floors housing nonambulatory clients and 44 inches (1118 mm) on floors housing only ambulatory clients.*
2. *Group R-4 occupancies shall have 44 inches (1118 mm) on floors housing clients.*

Exceptions:

1. *Corridors serving an occupant load of 10 or less shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.*
2. *Corridors serving ambulatory persons only and having an occupant load of 49 or less shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.*

In Group R-2.1 occupancies provided with fire sprinklers throughout and which are required to have rated corridors, door closers need not be installed on doors to client sleeping rooms.

425.8.4.3 *In a Group R-2.1 and Group R-4 occupancies having smoke barriers, cross-corridor doors in corridors 6 feet (1829 mm) or less in width shall have, as a minimum, a door 36 inches (914 mm) in width.*

425.8.5 Changes in level. *In Group R-3.1 occupancies housing nonambulatory clients, interior changes in level up to 0.25 inch (6 mm) may be vertical and without edge treatment. Changes in level between 0.25 inch (6 mm) and 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (50-percent slope). Changes in level greater than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp.*

425.8.6 Stairways.

425.8.6.1 *Group R-2.1 and Group R-4 occupancies housing more than six nonambulatory clients above the* *first floor shall be provided with two vertical exit enclosures. Stairway enclosures shall be in compliance with Section 1022.*

425.8.6.2 *Group R-3.1 occupancies may continue to use existing stairways (except for winding and spiral stairways which are not permitted as a required means of egress) provided the stairs have a maximum rise of 8 inches (203 mm) with a minimum run of 9 inches (229 mm). The minimum stairway width may be 30 inches (762 mm).*

425.8.7 Floor separation. *Group R-3.1 occupancies shall be provided with a non-fire-resistance constructed floor separation at stairs which will prevent smoke migration between floors. Such floor separation shall have equivalent construction of 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard on one side of wall framing.*

Exceptions:

1. *Occupancies with at least one exterior exit from floors occupied by clients.*
2. *Occupancies provided with automatic fire sprinkler systems complying with Chapter 9.*

425.8.7.1 Doors within floor separations. *Doors within such floor separations shall be tight fitting solid wood at least $1^3/_8$ inches (35 mm) in thickness. Door glazing shall not exceed 1296 square inches (32 918 mm^2) with no dimension greater than 54 inches (1372 mm). Such doors shall be positive latching, smoke gasketed and shall be automatic-closing by smoke detection.*

425.8.8 Fences and gates. *Grounds of a Residential Care for the Elderly facility serving Alzheimer clients may be fenced and gates therein equipped with locks, provided safe dispersal areas are located not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the buildings. Dispersal areas shall be sized to provide an area of not less than 3 square feet (0.28 m^2) per occupant. Gates shall not be installed across corridors or passageways leading to such dispersal areas unless they comply with egress requirements.*

425.8.9 Basement exits. *One exit is required to grade level when the basement is accessible to clients.*

425.8.10 Delayed egress locks. *See Section 1008.1.9.7.*

425.9 Request for alternate means of protection for facilities housing bedridden clients*. Request for alternate means of protection shall apply to Sections 425 through 425.9. Request for approval to use an alternative material, assembly or materials, equipment, method of construction, method of installation of equipment, or means of protection shall be made in writing to the local fire enforcing agency by the facility, client or the client's authorized representative. Sufficient evidence shall be submitted to substantiate the need for an alternate means of protection.*

The facility, client or the client's representative or the local fire enforcing agency may request a written opinion from the State Fire Marshal concerning the interpretation of the regulations promulgated by the State Fire Marshal for a particular factual dispute. The State Fire Marshal shall issue the written opinion within 45 days following the request.

Approval of a request for use of an alternative material, assembly or materials, equipment, method of construction, method of installation of equipment, or means of protection made pursuant to this section shall be limited to Group R-3.1 occupancies housing a bedridden client.

Approvals made by the local fire enforcing agency and the written opinion by the State Fire Marshal shall be applicable only to the requesting facility and shall not be construed as establishing any precedent for any future request by that facility or any other facility.

425.10 Temporarily bedridden clients. *Clients who become temporarily bedridden as defined in Health and Safety Code, Section 1569.72, as enforced by the Department of Social Services, may continue to be housed on any story in Group R-2.1, R-3.1, or R-4 occupancies classified as Residential Care Facilities for the Elderly (RCFE). Every Residential Care Facility for the Elderly (RCFE) admitting or retaining a bedridden resident shall, within 48 hours of the resident's admission or retention in the facility, notify the local fire authority with jurisdiction of the estimated length of time the resident will retain his or her bedridden status in the facility.*

SECTION 426
SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR LICENSED 24-HOUR CARE FACILITIES IN GROUPS I-1, R-3.1 AND R-4

426.1 Operator's statement. *Every person, firm or corporation maintaining or operating any Group I or R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 occupancy shall provide an operator's statement in accordance with Section 13132 of the Health and Safety Code which reads as follows:*

> *"**13132.** Every person, firm or corporation maintaining or operating any facility for the care of the mentally handicapped shall file a statement with the fire authority having jurisdiction within five days of the admission or readmission of a patient stating that such patient is an ambulatory or a nonambulatory person and enumerating the reasons for such classification. Such a statement shall also be filed for each existing patient within 30 days of the effective date of this section. Any statement required to be filed pursuant to this section shall be certified as to its correctness by the person attending such patient. It shall be unlawful for any person, firm, or corporation required to file a statement pursuant to this section to include false statements therein. Any such act shall be in violation of this section and subject to the provisions of Section 13112."*

HISTORY NOTE APPENDIX

California Fire Code
(Title 24, Part 9, California Code of Regulations)

For prior code history, see the History Note Appendix to the *California Fire Code* 2010 Triennial Edition, effective January 1, 2011.

1. SFM 03-12—Adoption of the 2012 edition of the *International Fire Code* published by the International Code Council, for incorporation into the 2013 *California Fire Code*, CCR, Title 24, Part 9 with amendments for the State Fire Marshal regulated occupancies, effective on January 1, 2014.

2. Errata to correct editorial errors within the preface and Chapter 2, 4, 5, App. B, App. C and App. K of this code. Effective January 1, 2014.

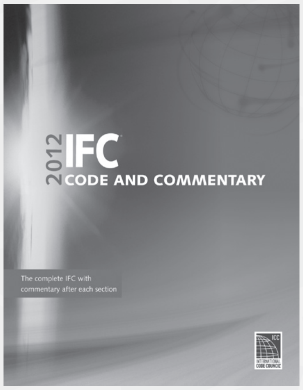
3. *2013 Intervening Cycle Supplement; SFM 03/13 – Approved by the California Building Standards Commission on July 22, 2014. Published on January 1, 2015 and effective July 1, 2015.*

4. *Errata to correct editorial errors within various chapters throughout the code. Effective January 1, 2015.*

ICC INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

People Helping People Build a Safer World®

NEW TOOLS FOR YOUR FIRE CODE



2012 IFC CODE AND COMMENTARY

The complete IFC with commentary after each section

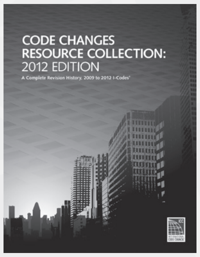
CODE AND COMMENTARY IN ONE!

2012 IFC® CODE AND COMMENTARY

This insightful reference contains the complete text of the IFC plus expert commentary printed after each code section. The Code and Commentary is an ideal go-to reference for effective design, construction and inspection. Features:

- ✓ All text, tables and figures from the code
- ✓ Expert technical commentary printed after each code section
- ✓ Suggestions for effective application
- ✓ Historical and technical background
- ✓ General Comments and Purpose statements for each chapter

SOFT COVER #3410S12 | **PDF CD-ROM** #3410CD12 | **PDF DOWNLOAD** #874P12



CODE CHANGES RESOURCE COLLECTION: 2012 EDITION

DOWNLOAD CRITICAL CODE HISTORY!

CODE CHANGES RESOURCE COLLECTION 2012 EDITION: A COMPLETE REVISION HISTORY, 2009 TO THE 2012 I-CODES

Similar to a legislative history for laws and statutes, this provides a complete revision history from the 2009 to the 2012 editions of the IBC, IRC, IFC, IPC and IMC. The information provided includes the original proposal, committee action and final action documentation, all in a single document, which greatly simplifies the research that would otherwise be necessary to track the history of a new, revised or deleted code section from 2009 to 2012. This valuable history will quickly pay for itself in time saved researching code history.

PDF DOWNLOAD #8892P12

2012 INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE STUDY COMPANION

INCLUDES BONUS ONLINE QUIZ!

THE 2012 INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE® STUDY COMPANION

A comprehensive self-study guide addressing occupancy classification, types of construction, fire protection systems, fire-resistance-rated construction, means of egress, and more. The Companion's 18 study sessions provide practical learning assignments and contain specific learning objectives, applicable code text and commentary, and a list of questions summarizing key points for study. An answer key indicates the correct response and code reference for each of the 584 study questions.

SOFT COVER #4407S12 | **PDF DOWNLOAD** #8950P082

2012 IFC FlashCards

GET TEST-READY!

2012 IFC FLASHCARDS

This helpful study aid provides an effective, time tested method for study and information retention. FlashCards can be used anytime, anywhere and are prepared by code experts to ensure accuracy and quality. (190 cards)

#1421S12

Order Your Code Tools Today! 1-800-786-4452 | www.iccsafe.org/books

ICC INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

People Helping People Build a Safer World®

FREE PREVIEW VIDEO ONLINE!

SIGNIFICANT CHANGES TO THE INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE®, 2012 EDITION

This must-have guide provides comprehensive, yet practical, analysis of the critical changes made between the 2009 and 2012 editions of the IFC. Key changes are identified then followed by in-depth discussion of how the change affects real-world application. Coverage reflects provisions with special significance, including new and innovative design ideas and technologies, modern materials and methods of construction, and current approaches to safety and stability. (200 pages)

SOFT COVER #7404S12

pocketINTERPS: 2012 IFC

This handy pocket-sized guide compiles hundreds of real-world questions from code users and combines them with detailed answers from ICC code experts. A durable cover and spiral binding make it easy to use in the field or office. (150 pages)

SOFT COVER #4412S12 | **PDF DOWNLOAD** #8950P277

FIRE INSPECTOR'S GUIDE: BASED ON THE 2012 INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE®

Your ideal pocket-sized resource for effective, accurate, consistent, and complete fire inspections.

- Learn the most important and most relevant fire inspection information from the fire code.
- Quickly identify the relevant IFC® section for each topic listed.
- Increase the efficiency of fire inspections based on an occupancy-specific format.
- Become aware of common hazards and the most frequently violated safety issues for various uses.
- Increase fire inspection effectiveness by focusing on the most relevant issues.
- Increase fire inspection consistency based on a common listing of important subjects. (200 pages)

SOFT COVER #4401S12 | **PDF DOWNLOAD** #8748P12

CALIFORNIA FIRE INSPECTION GUIDE: BASED ON THE 2013 CALIFORNIA FIRE CODE

Published by the California Fire Prevention Officers Association, this is a handy pocket-sized guide for both fire prevention inspectors and engine company members. Convenient booklet format separated by occupancy allows the user to look up exiting, fire extinguisher, housekeeping, electrical questions, and more in the field. Based on the 2013 California codes and Title 19 requirements this easy to use reference is a must have for anyone conducting basic fire prevention inspections.

SOFT COVER #4409S13

Order Your Code Tools Today! 1-800-786-4452 | www.iccsafe.org/books

14-09691